AL-BAHER

Connect 5

Parents' Guide

Second Term



Name : ....

Class : ....

School: ....

Primary

5

Contents



Unit 7 Homes in Egypt

المنازل في مصر



In this unit the student will ...

في هذه الوحدة الطالب سوف ...

- listen, read, research, and write about Egyptian homes now and in Ancient Egypt.
  يستمع ويقرأ ويبحث ويكتب عن المنازل المصرية الآن وفي مصر القديمة.
- talk about the home and furniture.
  يتكلم عن المنزل والأثاث.
- read, understand, and listen to a short dialog about different homes.
  يقرأ ويفهم ويستمع إلى محادثة قصيرة عن المنازل المختلفة.
- understand and use the simple past to talk about past events.
  يفهم ويستخدم زمن الماضي البسيط ليتكلم عن أحداث في الماضي
- learn how to say double vowels.
  يتعلم كيف ينطق حرفين متحركين
- write a simple blog about an unusual home.
  يكتب مدونة بسيطة عن منزل غير عادي
- research and make a presentation about an Ancient Egyptian home.
  يبحث ويقوم بعمل عرض عن المنزل المصري القديم.



Lesson (1) THE HOME

Listen and repeat. استمع وردد.

closet
خزانة ملابس



cushion
وسادة



oven
فرن



elevator
مصعد (أسانسير)



Things at home
أشياء في المنزل



balcony
شرفة (بلكونة)



shower
دُش



television
تلفاز



armchair
كرسي ذو ذراعين

Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Extra Vocabulary كلمات إضافية

house منزل	apartment شقة	living room حجرة معيشة
bedroom حجرة نوم	bathroom حمام	kitchen مطبخ
parents الوالدين	space فضاء - فراغ	closer أقرب
traditional تقليدي	modern حديث - عصري	old قديم
big كبير الحجم	small صغير الحجم	fantastic رائع

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
live يعيش	lived	move ينتقل	moved
cook يطهو	cooked	share يشارك	shared
prefer يفضل	preferred	like يحب	liked

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
come يأتي	came	see يرى	saw



Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

welcome to.... مرحبًا بكم في....	come in.... تفضل بالدخول
part of جزء من	move to.... ينتقل إلى....
cook in يطهو في	a gift from.... هدية من....
What about....? ماذا عن....؟	What a great view! يا له من منظر رائع!
share....with.... يشارك....مع....	live in يعيش في......

Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.



Listen and read. استمع واقرأ.

Fareeda	:	Hi Dina, welcome to my new apartment! Come in! أهلًا دينا، مرحبًا بك في شقتي الجديدة! تفضلي بالدخول!
Dina	:	Thanks! Do you like living here? شكرًا! هل تحبين العيش هنا؟
Fareeda	:	I love it! It's a great apartment! I like this part of town and it's much bigger than our old apartment. أنا أحبها! إنها شقة رائعة! أحب هذا الجزء من المدينة وهي أكبر بكثير من شقتنا القديمة.
Dina	:	How long did you live in your old apartment? كم المدة التي عشتيها في شقتك القديمة؟
Fareeda	:	Twelve years, since I was born. Then my parents had to move to a new job, so we moved to a closer apartment. اثنا عشرة سنة، منذ مولدي. ثم اضطر والديّ إلى الانتقال إلى وظيفة جديدة، لذلك انتقلنا إلى شقة أقرب.
Dina	:	So, what's better about this new apartment? إذن، ما هو الأفضل في هذه الشقة الجديدة؟
Fareeda	:	Come and see. The new kitchen is bigger, and the oven is more modern. My mom says it's much easier to cook in. تعالى وشاهدي. المطبخ الجديد أكبر والفرن أكثر حداثة. تقول أمي إنه أسهل بكثير أن تطبخي فيه.
Dina	:	Very nice. And this is the living room? جميل جدًا. وهذه هي غرفة المعيشة؟
Fareeda	:	Yes, as you can see, there's more space so we can have a bigger television. Look at these traditional cushions. They were a gift from Grandma. نعم! كما ترين، هناك مساحة أكبر حتى نتمكن من امتلاك تلفاز أكبر. انظري إلى هذه الوسائد التقليدية. كانوا هدية من الجدة.
Dina	:	Oh, yes! What about the bedrooms? أوه، نعم! وماذا عن غرف النوم؟
Fareeda	:	We have three bedrooms now. I share a room with my sister, Amira, but our bedroom is really big. And we have two bathrooms. لدينا ثلاث غرف نوم الآن. أتشارك غرفة مع أختي أميرة لكن غرفة نومنا كبيرة جدًا. ولدينا حمامين.
Dina	:	It's lovely! The balcony is fantastic too - what a great view! إنها جميلة! الشرفة رائعة أيضًا - يا له من منظر رائع!

Help your child listen and read the dialog.
ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ المحادثة.



Activities

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False. استمع واكتب (T) صح أو (F) خطأ.

1. My parents had to move to a new job. ( )
2. We moved to a farther apartment. ( )
3. The new kitchen is bigger. ( )
4. We have two bedrooms now. ( )

2 Listen and complete. استمع وأكمل.

1. Fareeda lives in a new ....
2. The new apartment is ....
3. The new apartment is bigger than the .... one.
4. Fareeda's parents moved to a new ....

3 Read and match. اقرأ وصل.

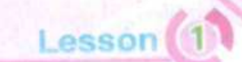
1. Welcome to — a) a room with my brother.
2. How long did you live — b) I live in an apartment.
3. I share — c) my new apartment.
4. Where do you live? — d) in your old apartment?

1-( ) 2-( ) 3-( ) 4-( )

4 Read and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d. اقرأ واختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. I live in a/an ....
   a) lake b) apartment c) balcony d) sea

Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.



2. We sleep in the ....
   a) bathroom b) living room c) bedroom d) kitchen
3. There is a/an .... in the bathroom.
   a) shower b) armchair c) bed d) oven
4. Welcome .... my new apartment!
   a) in b) to c) with d) for
5. There is a/an .... in the kitchen.
   a) oven b) armchair c) bed d) shower

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences. أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوّن جملًا صحيحة.

1. in - I - an apartment - live - .
   ....
2. is - Why - happy - Fareeda - ?
   ....
3. about - bedrooms - What - the - ?
   ....
4. fantastic - balcony - The - is - .
   ....

6 Write a paragraph of about (40) words. اكتب فقرة من (40) كلمة.

My new apartment

Guiding words:
(new apartment - bigger - balcony - fantastic)

....
....

7 Punctuate the following. ضع علامات الترقيم على ما يلي.

what a great view

....

Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.



Lesson (2 / A) MY PERFECT ROOM

Key Vocabulary كلمات رئيسية

on the right على اليمين	on the left على اليسار
on the wall على الحائط	in the middle of.... في منتصف
next to بجوار	

Extra Vocabulary كلمات إضافية

poster ملصق	perfect مثالي	chair كرسي
video games ألعاب فيديو	alone بمفرده	street شارع

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Present	Past	Present	Past
miss يفتقد - يفوته	missed	die يموت	died
smile يبتسم	smiled	sit يجلس	sat
try يحاول	tried	eat يأكل	ate

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

perfect bedroom حجرة نوم مثالية	sit in a chair يجلس على كرسي
make friends يكوّن صداقات	go down the street ينزل الشارع

Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Read about the bedroom.



I love my bedroom. I share it with my sister. On the right, there is my bed with a desk next to it. On the left, there is my sister's bed. In the middle of the room, there is an armchair with two cushions and a big closet. On the wall, there are lots of posters of animals.

أنا أحب غرفة نومي. أشاركها مع أختي. على اليمين يوجد سريري وبجانبه مكتب. على اليسار يوجد سرير أختي. في منتصف الغرفة يوجد كرسي بذراعين مع وسادتين وخزانة كبيرة. و على الحائط، هناك الكثير من ملصقات الحيوانات.

* Draw your perfect bedroom.

Help your child identify these prepositions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على حروف الجر للمكان.

Prefix

Prefix: is a group of letters that we add before the stem of a word which cause a change in its meaning

البادئة: هي مجموعة حروف نضيفها قبل أصل الكلمة والتي تسبب تغيير في معناها

Un- — — — means 'not'. البادئة (un-) تفيد عكس الكلمة

friendly	ودود	→	unfriendly	غير ودود
comfortable	مريح	→	uncomfortable	غير مريح
lucky	محظوظ	→	unlucky	غير محظوظ
safe	أمن	→	unsafe	غير آمن
happy	سعيد	→	unhappy	غير سعيد
fair	عادل	→	unfair	غير عادل - ظالم

Study the following

Word الكلمة	Meaning معناها
unfriendly	not kind to someone
unsafe	dangerous
unhappy	sad
uncomfortable	something that doesn't feel nice to sit on or wear on your body
unlucky	something bad happens to you without a reason
unfair	something that happens that isn't morally right or fair

Help your child identify the prefix (un-).
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على البادئة (un-).

1 Read and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

اقرأ واختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. .... the right of my bedroom, there is my bed.
   a) In b) At c) On d) To
2. In the .... of the room, there is an armchair.
   a) right b) left c) straight d) middle
3. .... the wall, there are lots of posters of animals.
   a) On b) So c) For d) To
4. His cat died last week. He was very ....
   a) unhappy b) lucky c) unsafe d) unfair
5. I never sit in that green armchair. It's very ....
   a) uncomfortable b) unlucky c) unfair d) safe
6. Don't go down the street in the dark alone. It's very ....
   a) unsafe b) fair c) unfair d) unkind
7. The bed is not very .... I can't sleep on it.
   a) comfortable b) happy c) unhappy d) fair
8. She is .... She is sad.
   a) happy b) delighted c) pleased d) unhappy

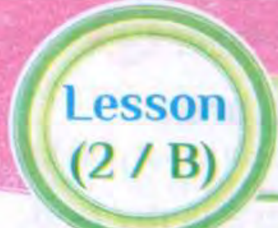
2 Read and match.

اقرأ وصل.

1. unfriendly	a) something bad happens to you without a reason
2. unhappy	b) dangerous
3. unlucky	c) sad
4. unsafe	d) not kind to someone
5. unfair	e) something that happens that isn't morally right or fair

1-( ) 2-( ) 3-( ) 4-( ) 5-( )

Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.



Lesson (2 / B) MY PROJECT ROOM

Listen and read. استمع واقرأ.


Howler monkeys in the jungle

My uncle is a scientist and loves animals. When he **was** younger, he **traveled** a lot in South America for work. He loved it there because the people **were** very friendly and **helped** him with his work. Then, about three years ago, something frightening **happened** to him and he was lucky he lived to tell me about it!

عمي عالم ويحب الحيوانات. عندما كان أصغر سنًا، سافر كثيرًا في أمريكا الجنوبية للعمل. لقد أحب المكان هناك لأن الناس كانوا ودودين للغاية وساعدوه في عمله. ثم منذ حوالي ثلاث سنوات، حدث له شيء مخيف وكان محظوظًا أن يعيش ليخبرني بذلك.

He was very interested in howler monkeys and **wanted** to do some research into their family groups. A local villager **told** him where there was a howler monkey family nearby and he was very happy. But the villager also **said**, "Tomorrow, we are going to have a lot of rain so it **could** be unsafe."

كان مهتمًا جدًا بالقردة العواء وأراد أن يجري بعض الأبحاث في مجموعات عائلاتهم. وأخبره أحد القرويين بمكان وجود عائلة قرد العواء في مكان قريب وكان سعيدًا جدًا. لكن القروي قال أيضًا، "غدًا ستهطل أمطار غزيرة لذا قد يكون الوضع غير آمن".

My uncle **set out** to look for the howler monkey family and soon he was deep in the jungle. He **could hear** the monkeys and he **looked up**. He **knew** he was very close to them. Then the rain started. It was very heavy rain.

انطلق عمي للبحث عن عائلة قرد العواء وسرعان ما كان في أعماق الغابة واستطاع أن يسمع القرود ونظر لأعلى. وكان يعلم أنه كان قريبًا جدًا منهم. ثم بدأ المطر. كانت أمطارًا غزيرة جدًا.

Soon, there was water everywhere and he couldn't see the path to go forward or back. Suddenly, lots of water **came** toward him and **carried** him away down to the river. He was very frightened.

وسرعان ما كان هناك ماء في كل مكان ولم يستطع رؤية الطريق للسير قدمًا أو للخلف. وفجأة، جاء الكثير من الماء نحوه وحمله بعيدًا إلى النهر. كان خائفًا جدًا.

Suddenly, he **saw** a hand and someone was shouting. It was the villager. He **took** Uncle's hand and said, "Now you are safe!" My uncle was very happy indeed!

وفجأة رأى يدًا وكان شخصًا يصرخ. لقد كان القروي. أخذ بيد العم وقال، "الآن أنت بأمان!" كان عمي بالفعل سعيدًا للغاية!

Help your child listen and read.
ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ



The Past Simple Tense
زمن الماضي البسيط

Usage: الاستخدام:

1- To talk about something that happened once.
١- للتعبير عن شيء حدث ذات مرة فيما مضى.

e.g. I visited her house when I was five.

2- To talk about something that happened several times in the past.
٢- للتعبير عن شيء حدث عدة مرات في الماضي.

e.g. We went to my aunt's house at the beach every summer.

3- To talk about something that was true for some time in the past.
٣- للتعبير عن شيء ما كان حقيقيًا لوقت ما في الماضي.

e.g. He loved living in his grandmother's apartment as a child.

4- Expressions with ago. ٤- التعبيرات مع ago.

e.g. I met her in Zagazig two years ago.

Form: التكوين:

The second form of the verb. التصريف الثاني للفعل.

Regular verbs الأفعال المنتظمة



يُضاف للفعل المنتظم (d, ed, ied).

use → used | play → played | try → tried

- We add (d) when the verb ends in (e). نضيف (d) عندما ينتهي الفعل بـ (e).

live → lived | die → died | create → created

Help your child use the past simple tense.
ساعد طفلك أن يستخدم زمن الماضي البسيط.

- We add (ed) to the other regular verbs. نضيف (ed) لنهاية الأفعال المنتظمة الأخرى

travel ⟶ traveled | want ⟶ wanted | help ⟶ helped

- We change (-y) to (-i) and add (-ed) when the verb ends in a consonant + (y)

نحول الـ (y) إلى (i) ثم نضيف (ed) للفعل المنتهي بـ (y) يسبقه حرف ساكن.

try ⟶ tried | carry ⟶ carried | study ⟶ studied

Irregular verbs الأفعال الغير منتظمة

come ⟶ came | eat ⟶ ate | see ⟶ saw

Study these verbs

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
visit	يزور	visited	happen	يحدث	happened
love	يحب	loved	help	يساعد	helped
carry	يحمل	carried	travel	يسافر	traveled
look up	ينظر لأعلى	looked up	start	يبدأ	started
create	يبتكر	created	rain	تمطر	rained

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
go	يذهب	went	meet	يقابل	met
am / is	يكون	was	tell	يخبر	told
are	يكونوا	were	say	يقول	said
take	يأخذ	took	set out	يبدأ رحلة	set out

Help your child identify the past simple tense.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على زمن الماضي البسيط.

Negative: النفي:

Subject (الفاعل) + didn't + inf. (المصدر)

e.g. The people didn't help him with his work.

Question السؤال:

(Yes / No) question: السؤال بـ (هل):

Did + subject (الفاعل) + inf. (المصدر) ......?

e.g. Did you visit Ali yesterday? - Yes, I did. - No, I didn't.

Wh- question السؤال بكلمة استفهام:

Q.W. + did + subject (الفاعل) + inf. (المصدر) ......?

e.g. When did you meet Heba?
- I met her two days ago.

Keywords الكلمات الدالة:

yesterday	أمس	last	الماضي
ago	فيما مضى - منذ	in the past	في الماضي
in 2020	في عام ٢٠٢٠		

1 Read and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

اقرأ واختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. I .... her house when I was five.
   a) visit b) visited c) visits d) visiting
2. She .... her friend two days ago.
   a) met b) meet c) meets d) meeting
3. He .... to South America last week.
   a) travel b) travelling c) traveled d) travels

Help your child identify the past simple tense.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على زمن الماضي البسيط.

4 The local people didn't .... him with his work.
a) help b) helps c) helped d) helping

5 He didn't .... Om Ali in Tanta.
a) eat b) ate c) eats d) eating

6 He came here two days ....
a) every b) yesterday c) now d) ago

7 I visited her when I .... five.
a) is b) am c) were d) was

8 Yesterday, my cousin .... to visit us.
a) come b) came c) comes d) coming

9 His grandma went to Aswan ....
a) now b) tomorrow c) today d) last year

10 It .... rain yesterday.
a) doesn't b) didn't c) don't d) isn't

11 She .... a fantastic sculpture last summer.
a) create b) created c) creates d) creating

2 Make the sentences negative. حول هذه الجمل إلى صيغة النفي.

1 He traveled all over Egypt.
....

2 He ate Om Ali in Tanta.
....

3 It rained yesterday.
....

4 They came here by airplane.
....

Activities

1 Listen and complete. استمع وأكمل.

1 I love my ....

2 ...., there is my bed.

3 In the .... of the room, there is an armchair.

4 ...., there are lots of posters of animals.

2 Read and match. اقرأ وصل.

1 unsafe — a uncomfortable.
2 He looks — b not kind to someone
3 unfriendly — c dangerous
4 The armchair is — d unhappy.

1-( ) 2-( ) 3-( ) 4-( )

3 Read and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.
اقرأ واختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1 That's very.......... . You ate everything and didn't leave any for us.
a) dangerous b) sad c) fair d) unfair

2 He's very .... because he missed the bus.
a) unlucky b) unfriendly c) unfair d) fair

3 She's very.......... . She never smiles or tries to make friends.
a) unfriendly b) happy c) unfair d) unlucky

4 ...., my cousin came to visit us.
a) Now b) Yesterday c) Tomorrow d) Ago

5. We didn't .... any new friends.
   a) met   b) meets   c) meet   d) meeting

6. I .... Om Ali in Tanta yesterday.
   a) eats   b) ate   c) eating   d) eaten

4 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوّن جملًا صحيحة.

1. unhappy - He - very - was - .

....

2. didn't - It - yesterday - rain - .

....

3. is - uncomfortable - The armchair - very - .

....

5 Read the following text and answer the questions.

اقرأ النص التالي وأجب عن الأسئلة.

My uncle is a scientist and loves animals. When he was younger, he traveled a lot in South America for work. He loved it there because the people were very friendly and helped him with his work. He was very interested in howler monkeys and wanted to do some research into their family groups.

A) Choose the correct answer from a,b, c or d.

1. People in South America are ....
   a) dangerous   b) sad   c) friendly   d) safe

2. My uncle loves ....
   a) books   b) animals   c) plants   d) sports

B) Answer the following questions.

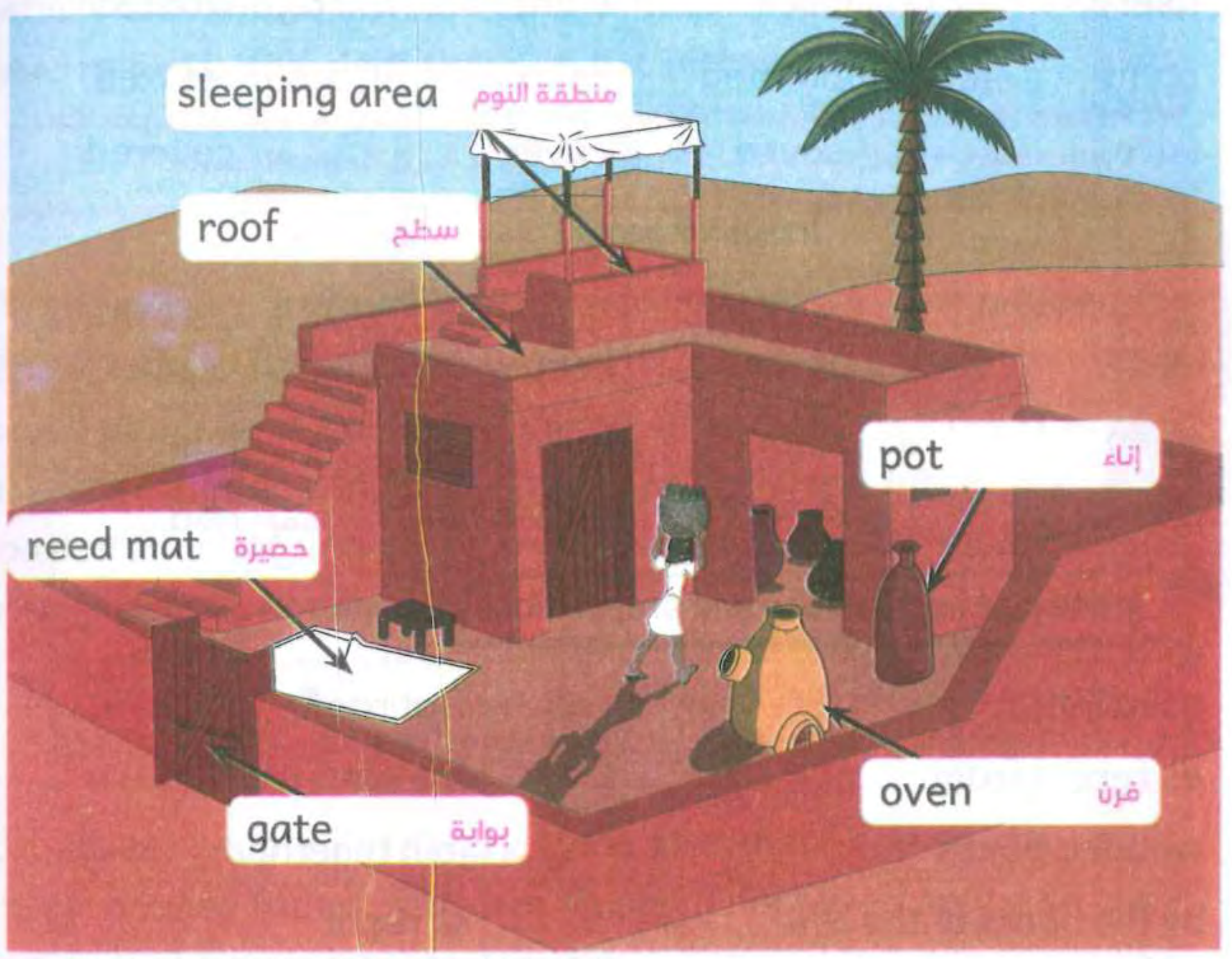
3. What does your uncle do? ....

4. Where did your uncle travel when he was younger? ....

Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Lesson (3) ANCIENT EGYPTIAN HOMES

Listen, point and say. استمع، أشر وقل.



Extra Vocabulary كلمات إضافية

Ancient Egypt	مصر القديمة	drinking	الشرب
cool	معتدل البرودة	cooking	الطهي
furniture	أثاث	washing	الغسيل
the countryside	الريف	papyrus	ورق البردي

Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past
use	يستخدم	used
paint	يدهن - يلون	painted
save	يوفر - يحفظ	saved
want	يريد	wanted
relax	يسترخي	relaxed
cover	يغطي	covered

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past
make	يصنع	made
sleep	ينام	slept
grow	يزرع	grew
keep	يحفظ - يربي	kept
build	يبني	built
have - has	يمتلك	had

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

used for	يستخدم لـ.....	flat roofs	أسطح مستوية
different from....	مختلف عن	the same as ..	نفس الشيء مثل..
wooden boxes	صناديق خشبية	join together	تتصل ببعضها
by the banks of the Nile	بالقرب من ضفاف النيل	at night	ليلًا

Listen and read. استمع واقرأ.

In Ancient Egypt, many people made their homes near the Nile. They used its water for drinking, cooking, and washing. They also used mud from the river to make bricks for their houses. The mud bricks made very strong walls.

في مصر القديمة، بنى الكثير من الناس منازلهم بالقرب من النيل. واستخدموا مياهه للشرب والطبخ والغسيل. كما استخدموا طين النهر لصنع الطوب لمنازلهم. الطوب اللبن صنع جدرانًا قوية جدًا.

Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Ancient Egyptians wanted to keep their homes cool. The mud bricks helped do this. Some people also painted their homes white to make them cooler. Ancient Egyptian homes all had flat roofs, which were the coolest part of the house. Families often cooked, ate, relaxed, and slept there on hot nights.

أراد المصريون القدماء الحفاظ على برودة منازلهم، وساعد الطوب اللبن في القيام بذلك. قام بعض الناس أيضًا بطلاء منازلهم باللون الأبيض لجعلها أكثر برودة. كانت جميع المنازل المصرية القديمة ذات أسطح مستوية، والتي كانت أبرد جزء في المنزل. وكانت العائلات غالبًا ما تقوم بالطهي والأكل والاسترخاء والنوم هناك في الليالي الحارة.

The furniture in Ancient Egyptian homes was very different from today. There were reed mats to sit and sleep on. They used papyrus to cover the windows and doors. This kept the insects outside. In every home, there were large pots and baskets for storing crops and wooden boxes for clothes. Not many people had beds or chairs.

كان الأثاث في المنازل المصرية القديمة مختلف تماما عن اليوم. كانت هناك حصائر من البوص للجلوس والنوم عليها. واستخدموا ورق البردي لتغطية النوافذ والأبواب. وكان هذا يُبقي الحشرات في الخارج. وفي كل منزل، كان هناك أواني وسلال كبيرة لتخزين المحاصيل وصناديق خشبية للملابس. لم يكن لدى الكثير من الناس أسِرَّة أو كراسي.

In cities, people lived very close together, and so they built their houses taller, with two floors. This saved space so they could build more houses. City houses joined together, just like today. In the countryside, houses usually only had one floor, and they also had a garden. They grew vegetables and kept chickens there.

في المدن، كان الناس يعيشون بالقرب جدًا من بعضهم البعض ولذلك بنوا منازلهم أطول، من طابقين. وهذا وفر مساحة حتى يتمكنوا من بناء المزيد من المنازل. كانت منازل المدينة متصلة ببعضها، تماما كما هو الحال اليوم. في الريف كانت المنازل عادة مكونة من طابق واحد وكانت تحتوي على حديقة، وكانوا يزرعون الخضار، ويربون الدجاج فيها.

Help your child listen, read and discuss.
ساعد طفلك أن يستمع، يقرأ ويناقش.

Listen and read the poem. استمع واقرأ القصيدة.

By the banks of the ancient River Nile, بجوار ضفاف نهر النيل القديم،
Egyptian houses had a special style كانت منازل المصريين لها طراز خاص
Dark inside with small windows, مظلمة من الداخل وبها نوافذ صغيرة،
Reed mats on the roof where the cool wind blows,
حصائر من البوص على السطح حيث تهب الرياح الباردة،
Outside under the stars at night, في الخارج تحت النجوم بالليل،
One family together, feeling all right. أسرة واحدة معًا، تشعر بأنها بخير.
Mud from the Nile made their walls الطين من النيل جعل جدرانهم
Safe and strong, and never to fall. آمنة وقوية، ولا تسقط أبدًا.

Activities

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False. استمع واكتب (T) صح أو (F) خطأ.

1. In cities, people lived very close together. ( )
2. They built their houses shorter with two floors. ( )
3. City houses joined together. ( )
4. In the countryside, they grew vegetables. ( )

2 Listen and complete. استمع وأكمل.

1. In ancient Egypt, many people made their homes near ....
2. They used .... for drinking, cooking and washing.
3. They used .... from the river to make bricks.
4. The mud .... made very strong walls.

Help your child listen, read and discuss.
ساعد طفلك أن يستمع، يقرأ ويناقش.

3 Read and match. اقرأ وصِل.

1. In ancient Egypt, people made	a) sit and sleep on.
2. The mud bricks made	b) their clothes in wooden boxes.
3. There were reed mats to	c) their homes near the Nile.
4. The Ancient Egyptians stored	d) unhappy.
	e) very strong walls.

1-( ) 2-( ) 3-( ) 4-( )

4 Read and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d. اقرأ واختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. The mud bricks helped Ancient Egyptians to keep their homes ....
   a) sunny b) cool c) warm d) hot
2. The Ancient Egyptians stored their clothes in .... boxes.
   a) wooden b) sand c) glass d) plastic
3. A lot of Ancient Egyptians made their homes near the ....
   a) lake b) Nile c) desert d) Red Sea
4. The Ancient Egyptians used mud .... to make their houses.
   a) bricks b) reeds c) papyrus d) stones
5. The furniture in Ancient Egyptians homes was very different .... today.
   a) from b) for c) on d) as

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences. أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوّن جملًا صحيحة.

1. their - What - use to - people - did - build - homes - ?

....

Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

2 there - They - chickens - kept - vegetables - grew - and - .

....

3 had - Egyptian houses - style - a special - .

....

6 Read the following text and answer the questions.

اقرأ النص التالي وأجب عن الأسئلة.

Ancient Egyptians wanted to keep their homes cool. The mud bricks helped do this. Some people also painted their homes white to make them cooler. Ancient Egyptian homes all had flat roofs, which were the coolest part of the house. Families often cooked, ate, relaxed, and slept there on hot nights.

A) Choose the correct answer from a,b, c or d.

1 Ancient Egyptians wanted to keep their homes ....

a) sunny b) warm c) hot d) cool

2 Some people also painted their homes ....

a) yellow b) black c) brown d) white

B) Answer the following questions.

3 What did Ancient Egyptian homes all have?

4 What did the Ancient Egyptians use to make their homes cool?

7 Write a paragraph of about (40) words. اكتب فقرة من (40) كلمة.

Ancient Egyptian Homes

Guiding words:

(made - Nile - mud bricks - cool - flat roofs - clothes - wooden boxes - reed mats - sit)

....

....

Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.



PRONUNCIATION

Listen and repeat. استمع وردد.





Help your child learn how to pronounce double vowels.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعلم نطق حرفين متحركين متتاليين.

short (o)

(oo) /ʊ/



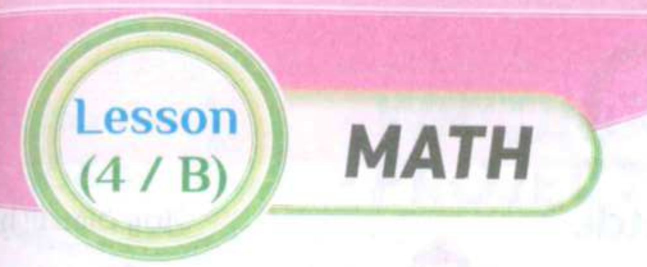
- **Put the words in the correct column in the table.**

ضع الكلمات في العمود المناسب للجدول.

(school - book - flood - tree - three - wood - cook - food - zoo - spoon - pool - sheep - queen)

/u:/	/ʊ/	/ʌ/	/i:/

Help your child learn how to pronounce double vowels.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعلم نطق حرفين متحركين متتاليين.



MATH

Decimals الكسور العشرية

13.95				
1	3		9	5
tens عشرات	units آحاد	decimal point العلامة العشرية	tenths جزء من عشرة	hundredths جزء من مائة
			digits after the decimal point. أرقام بعد العلامة العشرية.	

How do we round decimal numbers?

كيف يمكننا تقريب الأرقام العشرية؟

➡ Circle the digit after the decimal point then notice.

حوط الرقم الموجود بعد العلامة العشرية ثم لاحظ:

1- If the digit in the tenths is 5 or more, then we'll round up to the nearest whole number.

إذا كان الرقم الموجود في خانة الجزء من العشرة (خمسة أو أكبر من خمسة)، إذن سوف نقرب لأعلى لأقرب عدد صحيح.

14.95 becomes (15) 12.62 becomes (13)

2- If the digit in the tenths is less than 5, then we round down to the nearest whole number.

إذا كان الرقم الموجود في خانة الجزء من العشرة (أقل من خمسة)، إذن سوف نقرب لأسفل لأقرب عدد صحيح.

14.44 becomes (14) 12.24 becomes (12)

Help your child learn how to round the decimal numbers.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعلم كيفية تقريب الكسور العشرية.



Activities

1 Read the sounds and match.

اقرأ الأصوات وصل.

1. /u:/
2. /ʊ/
3. /ʌ/
4. /i:/





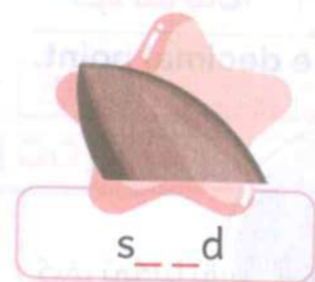




2 Listen and complete the word.

استمع وأكمل الكلمة.

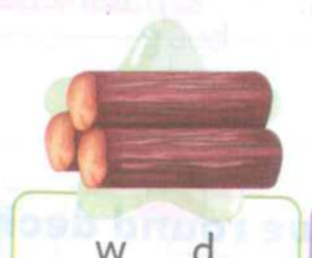




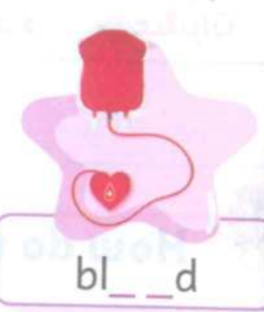
s_ _d



p_ _l



w_ _d



bl_ _d

3 Circle the digits after the decimal point then round the numbers.

حوّط الأرقام بعد العلامة العشرية ثم قرب هذه الأرقام.

1. 283.7 = ...
2. 7.2 = ...
3. 8.37 = ...
4. 3.126 = ...

4 Round up/down to the nearest whole number.

قرب لأقرب عدد صحيح.

1. 1.7 = ...
2. 3.2 = ...
3. 1.3 = ...
4. 3.56 = ...
5. 221.22 = ...
6. 45.67 = ...
7. 3.7 = ...
8. 189.37 = ...

Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Lessons (5&6) - WRITING - PROJECT

Key Vocabulary كلمات رئيسية

blogging	التدوين	ecological	بيئي	fit	يناسب
architect	مهندس معماري	pot	إناء	gate	بوابة
the Netherlands	هولندا	landscape	منظر طبيعي	heat	يسخن
fields	حقول	farmhouse	منزل ريفي	light	ضوء
different	مختلف	unusual	غير عادي	top	قمة
topic	موضوع	The Upside down house	البيت المقلوب		

Adjectives الصفات

Positive	إيجابية	Negative	سلبية
funny	مضحك - مرح	awful	فظيع
awesome	مدهش - مذهل	annoying	مزعج
brilliant	رائع - متألق	boring	ممل
cool	رائع - معتدل البرودة		
friendly	ودود		
interesting	شيق		

Note:

Blogging: to write about something in an online blog.
التدوين: أن تكتب عن شيء ما في مدونة عبر الإنترنت.

Ecological: related to living things and their environments.
بيئي: مرتبط بالكائنات الحية وبيئاتها.

Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Listen and read.

استمع واقرأ.

Dalida

BLOG HOME ABOUT ME LINKS ARCHIVE



Wednesday, 8th November

Unusual homes

Hi! My name's Dalida and I like blogging about different things. This week I'm writing about unusual homes. This topic is very interesting for me because my mom's an architect, so she sometimes takes me to see some brilliant places. It's really awesome!

أهلًا! اسمي داليدا وأنا أحب التدوين عن أشياء مختلفة. أكتب هذا الأسبوع عن منازل غير عادية. هذا الموضوع شيق جدًا بالنسبة لي لأن أمي مهندسة معمارية، لذا فهي تأخذني أحيانًا لرؤية بعض الأماكن الرائعة. إنه أمر رائع حقًا.

I found this unusual house in the Netherlands online - it's upside down! It is actually an old farmhouse which people are changing to make it modern. This works very well because all the windows are at the top, so you get a lot of light. Local people like it because it fits in very well with the local landscape, which is farms and fields. It is also very ecological because they use air, water, and sun to heat and make energy for the house. That's so cool!

لقد وجدت هذا المنزل الغريب في هولندا عبر الإنترنت. إنه مقلوب! إنه في الواقع منزل ريفي قديم ويغيره الناس لجعله حديثًا وهذا يسير بشكل جيد لأن كل النوافذ في الأعلى، وبالتالي تحصل على الكثير من الضوء. يحبه السكان المحليون لأنه يتـ , جـ. مع المناظر الطبيعية المحلية وهي المزارع والحقول. وهو أيضًا صديق للبيئة لأنهم يستخدمون الهواء والماء والشمس للتدفئة وتوليد الطاقة للمنزل. هذا رائع جدًا!!

What do you think of it? Do you like it?

ما رأيك فيه؟ هل يعجبك؟



Upside down house in the Netherlands



Tip!

Steps for writing a blog

خطوات كتابة مدونة

1- Write about something you like and enjoy. اكتب عن شيء تحبه وتستمتع به.

2- Write to your readers as if you are speaking to them. Use Contractions (I'm, It's) and words like "awesome" and "cool".
اكتب لقرائك وكأنك تتحدث إليهم. واستخدم الاختصارات (It's - I'm) وكلمات مثل مدهش وجميل

3- Use exclamation marks (!) and emojis 😊 😟 😄 😟.
استخدم علامات التعجب ووجوه المشاعر 😊 😟 😄 😟

4- Give your opinion and invite your readers to give theirs.
عبر عن رأيك واطلب من القراء التعبير عن آرائهم.

5- Check that your spelling is correct. تأكد أن الهجاء صحيح.

Activities

1 Read and match.

اقرأ وصِل.

1. I like
2. Ecological is related
3. My mom is an
4. Check that your

a. spelling is correct.
b. blogging about different things.
c. architect.
d. to living things and their environments.

2 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوِّن جملًا صحيحة.

1. writing - about - I'm - homes - unusual - .

....

2. you - Do - it - like - ?

....

3. 's - home - Where - the - ?

....

3 Read the following text and answer the questions.

اقرأ النص التالي وأجب عن الأسئلة.

I found this unusual house in the Netherlands online. It's upside down! It is actually an old farmhouse which people are changing to make it modern. This works very well because all the windows are at the top, so you get a lot of light. Local people like it because it fits in very well with the local landscape, which is farms and fields. It is also very ecological because they use air, water and sun to heat and make energy for the house.

A) Choose the correct answer from a,b, c or d.

1. The house is in the ....
   a) Netherlands b) Egypt c) France d) China
2. The house is upside ....
   a) up b) on c) at d) down

B) Answer the following questions.

3. Why is that house very ecological?

....

4. Where are the windows?

....

4 Write a paragraph of about (40) words.

اكتب فقرة من (40) كلمة.

The upside down house

Guiding words:
(unusual - in the Netherlands - upside down - windows - top)

....

....

Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Review on Unit (7)

Vocabulary

elevator	مصعد (أسانسير)	closet	خزانة ملابس
cushion	وسادة	oven	فرن
balcony	شرفة (بلكونة)	armchair	كرسي ذو ذراعين
television	تلفاز	shower	دش
sleeping area	منطقة النوم	roof	سطح
reed mat	حصيرة	gate	بوابة
pot	إناء	blogging	التدوين
ecological	بيئي	Upside down house	المنزل المقلوب

Adjectives

unfriendly	غير ودود	uncomfortable	غير مريح	unlucky	غير محظوظ
unsafe	غير آمن	unhappy	حزين	unfair	غير عادل
annoying	مزعج	awesome	مدهش - مذهل	awful	فظيع
friendly	ودود	funny	مرح - مضحك	interesting	شيق
boring	ممل	brilliant	لامع - متألق	cool	رائع - معتدل البرودة

Language

On the right, there is my bed.	على اليمين......
On the left, there's my sister's bed.	على اليسار......
In the middle of the room, there's a table.	في منتصف الغرفة......
He looks unhappy.	يبدو أنه غير سعيد.
I met her in Zagazig two years ago.	قابلتها في الزقازيق منذ سنتين.
It didn't rain yesterday.	لم تمطر أمس.

Help your child revise unit (7).
ساعد طفلك أن يراجع الوحدة السابعة.

Phonics

Double vowels

long (oo) /u:/		short (oo) /ʊ/		long (ee) /i:/	
school	مدرسة	book	كتاب	sheep	خروف
roof	سطح	cook	يطهو	seed	بذرة
food	طعام	wood	خشب	queen	ملكة
noon	الظهيرة	wool	صوف	tree	شجرة
spoon	ملعقة	good	جيد	cheese	جبن

Math

Decimals

23.95				
2	3	.	9	5
tens عشرات	units آحاد	decimal point العلامة العشرية	tenths جزء من عشرة	hundredths جزء من مائة
			digits after the decimal point. أرقام بعد العلامة العشرية.	

Round up/down

إذا كان الرقم الموجود في خانة الجزء من العشرة (خمسة أو أكبر من خمسة). إذن سوف نقرب لأعلى لأقرب عدد صحيح.

e.g. 15.95 becomes (16)

إذا كان الرقم الموجود في خانة الجزء من العشرة (أقل من خمسة). إذن سوف نقرب لأسفل لأقرب عدد صحيح.

e.g. 124.2 becomes (124)

Writing Corner

Write a paragraph of about (40) words. اكتب فقرة من (40) كلمة.

My new apartment

We moved to a new apartment. It is bigger than the old one. The kitchen is big and there is an oven in it. The living room has a balcony. It's really fantastic. There are three bedrooms. I share a bedroom with my sister. I like our new apartment.

Ancient Egyptian homes

In Ancient Egypt, many people made their homes near the Nile. They used mud bricks to make very strong walls. The mud bricks kept their houses cool. The furniture in Ancient Egyptian homes was very different from today. There were reed mats to sleep or sit on.

Unusual homes

I like blogging about unusual homes. I found an unusual house in the Netherlands online. It's upside down! All the windows are at the top, so you get a lot of light. Local people like it because it fits in very well with the local landscape, which is farms and fields. It is also very ecological because they use air, water, and sun to heat and make energy for the house.

Dictation on Unit (7)

Lesson (1)

Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning
....	خزانة ملابس	....	تليفزيون
....	وسادة	....	دش
....	فرن	....	مصعد
....	كرسي ذو ذراعين	....	بلكونه

Lesson (2)

Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning
....	على اليمين	....	على اليسار
....	على الحائط	....	في المنتصف
....	بجوار	....	مثالي

Lesson (3)

Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning
....	ورق البردي	....	إناء
....	منطقة النوم	....	حصيرة
....	طوب لبن	....	بوابة
....	سطح	....	الريف

Lesson (4)

Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning
....	شجرة	....	ناعم
....	خروف	....	دم
....	بذور	....	فيضان
....	ملكة	....	ظهيرة
....	سطح	....	يطهو
....	صوف	....	خشب

Lessons (5 & 6)

Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning
....	مهندس معماري	....	مقلوب
....	مزرعة	....	مناظر طبيعية

Help your child dictate these words.

ساعد طفلك في إملاء هذه الكلمات.

Activities on Unit (7)

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False. استمع واكتب (T) صح أو (F) خطأ.

1. My uncle is a teacher. ( )
2. He loves animals. ( )
3. He traveled a lot in South America for work. ( )
4. In South America, people were unfriendly. ( )

2 Listen and complete. استمع وأكمل

1. I like .... about different things.
2. I'm writing about unusual ....
3. This topic is very ....
4. My mom's an ....

3 Read and match. اقرأ وصل.

1. Where do you live?	a. Zagazig two years ago.
2. In the middle of the room,	b. keep homes cool.
3. I met her in	c. there is a table.
4. The mud bricks	d. I live in Tanta.
5. Ancient Egyptians put	e. their clothes in wooden boxes.
	f. not kind to someone.

1- ( ) 2- ( ) 3- ( ) 4- ( ) 5- ( )

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

4 Read the following text and answer the questions.

اقرأ النص التالي وأجب عن الأسئلة.

The furniture in Ancient Egyptian homes was very different from today. There were reed mats to sit and sleep on. They used papyrus to cover the windows and doors. This kept the insects outside. In every home, there were large pots and baskets for storing crops and wooden boxes for clothes. Not many people had beds or chairs.

In cities, people lived very close together, and so they built their houses taller, with two floors. This saved space so they could build more houses. City houses joined together, just like today. In the countryside, houses usually only had one floor, and they also had a garden. They grew vegetables and kept chickens there.

A) Choose the correct answer from a,b, c or d.

1. The opposite of the word "taller" is ....
   a) fatter b) bigger c) longer d) shorter
2. There were reed mats to .... and sleep on.
   a) sit b) drink c) build d) make

B) Answer the following questions.

3. How were the countryside houses?

....

4. How many floors did people build their houses in cities?

....

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوّن جملًا صحيحة.

1. does - What - home - like - the - look - ?

....

2. do - How - we - numbers - round - decimal - ?

....

3. didn't - dinner - She - eat - .

....

4. went - the - They - to - beach - .

....

6 Punctuate the following.

ضع علامات الترقيم على ما يلي.

1. we went to sharm El-Sheikh on holiday

....

2. where did Ancient Egyptians build their houses

....

7 Write a paragraph of about (40) words.

اكتب فقرة من (40) كلمة.

Ancient Egyptian Homes

Guiding elements:

- Where is the home? In the city or the country?
- What does the home look like from outside?

....

....

....

....

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Unit 8 At the doctor's
في عيادة الطبيب



In this unit the student will ... في هذه الوحدة الطالب سوف......

- listen, read, research, and write about different illnesses and treatments.
  يستمع و يقرأ ويبحث ويكتب عن أمراض مختلفة وعلاجها.
- read a story about an elephant. يقرأ قصة عن فيل.
- practice using "have" to talk about illnesses.
  يتدرب على استخدام الفعل " have" للحديث عن الأمراض.
- listen to and understand a conversation between a doctor and a patient.
  يستمع ويفهم محادثة بين طبيب ومريض.
- learn about and use the prefixes un, ir, il, and im.
  يتعلم عن ويستخدم السوابق un ,ir ,il وim.
- understand the difference between /f/ and /v/ sounds.
  يفهم الإختلاف بين صوتي /f/ و /v/.
- write a short paragraph about staying healthy
  يكتب فقرة قصيرة عن البقاء بصحة جيدة.
- plan what to put in a first-aid kit and make a poster.
  يخطط ما يضعه في صندوق الإسعافات الأولية ويقوم بعمل ملصق.



Lesson (1) THEY DIDN'T COME TO THE CLUB!

Main Vocabulary كلمات أساسية




earache ألم في الأذن


toothache ألم في الأسنان


backache ألم في الظهر


headache صداع


sore throat التهاب الحلق


a cold زكام / نزلة برد


cough كحة / سعال


stomachache ألم في المعدة

Extra Vocabulary كلمات إضافية

ankle	كاحل القدم	honey	عسل	coach	مدرب
back	ظهر	dentist	طبيب أسنان	careful	حريص / حذر
shoulder	كتف	problem	مشكلة	leg	ساق
stomach	معدة	people	ناس	ear	أذن



Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال — *Irregular verbs* أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
hurt	يؤلم / يؤذي	hurt	come	يأتي	came
have / has	يملك / عنده	had	feel	يشعر	felt

Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

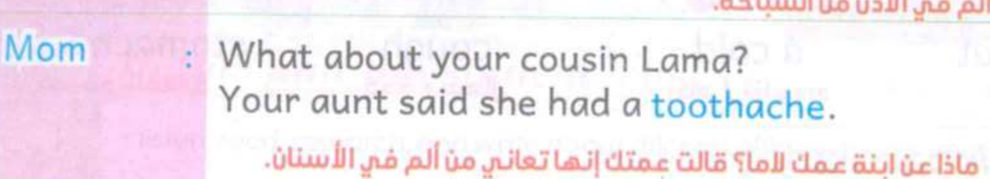
feel better	يشعر بتحسن	at football practice	في تدريب كرة القدم
worried about	قلِق بشأن	ouch!	تعبير يعبر عن الألم
I hope so	أتمنى ذلك	from swimming	من السباحة

Mom : Hi Fares! Did you have a good day at the club?
مرحبًا يا فارس! هل قضيت يومًا جيدًا في النادي؟

Fares : Not really. Only five people came to the club today!
في الواقع لا. جاء خمسة أشخاص فقط إلى النادي اليوم!

Mom : Oh no! Are they OK?
أوه لا! هل هم بخير؟

Fares : No, they have problems.
My friend Tarek hurt his ankle
at football practice last night.
And Amr has an earache from swimming.
لا، لديهم مشاكل. صديقي طارق أصيب في كاحله في تدريب كرة القدم الليلة الماضية.
ويعاني عمرو من ألم في الأذن من السباحة.



Mom : What about your cousin Lama?
Your aunt said she had a toothache.
ماذا عن ابنة عمك لاما؟ قالت عمتك إنها تعاني من ألم في الأسنان.



Fares : No, she wasn't there. I think she went to the dentist. Two of my friends have a cold. The coach told us to be careful. When we have a cough or a sore throat, we should stay home!
لا، لم تكن هناك. أعتقد أنها ذهبت إلى طبيب الأسنان. اثنان من أصدقائي مصابان بنزلة برد. أخبرنا المدرب أن نكون حذرين. عندما نصاب بالسعال أو التهاب الحلق، يجب أن نبقى في المنزل!

Mom : How do you feel?
كيف تشعر؟

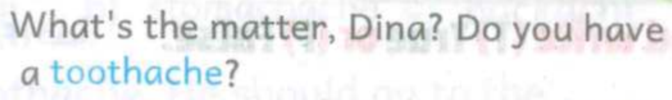
Fares : Well, I have a backache and I'm worried about my friends. I hope they'll feel better tomorrow.
حسنًا، لدي ألم في الظهر وأنا قلق على أصدقائي. آمل أن يشعروا بتحسن غدًا.



Mom : I hope so, too!
أتمنى ذلك أيضًا!

Help your child listen and read the dialog.
ساعد طفلك أن يستمع إلى الحوار ويقرأه.

Listen and learn. استمع واقرأ.



What's the matter, Dina? Do you have a toothache?
ما الأمر يا دينا؟ هل عندك ألم في الأسنان؟



Yes. My tooth hurts!
نعم. سنتي تؤلمني!



Mom, can I have some milk and honey for my cough, please?
هل يمكن أن أتناول بعض اللبن والعسل لأجل السعال يا أمي، من فضلك.



Ouch! My shoulder hurts!



آه! كتفي يؤلمني!





What's the matter, Wael? Does your stomach hurt?
ما الأمر يا وائل؟ هل معدتك تؤلمك؟



No, I have a headache.
لا. عندي صداع.





Do you have a sore throat?
هل عندك التهاب في الحلق؟

Yes, I do! It really hurts, and I can't talk.
نعم، إنه حقًا مؤلم و لا أستطيع التحدث.



Help your child listen and read the dialog.
ساعد طفلك أن يستمع إلى الحوار ويقرأه.

Activities

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False. استمع واكتب (T) صح أو (F) خطأ.

1. Only four people came to the club today. ( )
2. My friend Tarek hurt his ankle. ( )
3. Amr had a cough. ( )
4. Lama had a toothache. ( )

2 Listen and complete. استمع وأكمل.

1. Dina talks to her ....
2. Dina has a ....
3. Dina's tooth ....
4. Dina should go to the ....

3 Read and match. اقرأ وصل.

1. Did you have — a) from swimming.
2. Only five people — b) a good day at the club?
3. I think Lama went — c) came to the club today!
4. Amr has an earache — d) to the dentist.

1-( ) 2-( ) 3-( ) 4-( )

4 Read and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d. اقرأ واختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. My friend is at the ....
   a) doctor b) doctors c) doctor's d) vet
2. Only five people .... to the club today!
   a) came b) wanted c) ate d) saw

3. His ear hurts. He has a/an ....
   a) toothache b) stomachache c) backache d) earache
4. He has a toothache. He should go to the ....
   a) carpenter b) dentist c) nurse d) teacher
5. The coach told us to be ....
   a) careful b) careless c) sad d) bad
6. He has a .... He can't talk.
   a) stomachache b) sore throat c) backache d) earache

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences. أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوّن جملًا صحيحة

1. stomach - Does - hurt - your - ?
....
2. the dentist - Fares - went - to - .
....
3. about - friends - worried - I - am - my - .
....
4. used - a medicine - as - Doctors - honey - .
....

6 Punctuate the following. ضع علامات الترقيم على ما يلي:

⇨ what's the matter
....

⇨ i can t talk.
....



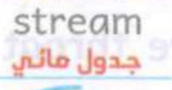
Lesson (2) SCIENCE

Main Vocabulary كلمات أساسية


glacier
نهر جليدي


stream
جدول مائي


lake
بحيرة






river
نهر


ocean
محيط


trunk
زلومة الفيل

Extra Vocabulary كلمات إضافية

health	الصحة	enormous	ضخم	side	جانب
excited	مسرور / متحمس	finally	في النهاية	fingers	أصابع اليد
incredible	لا يُصدّق	clever	ذكي / ماهر	smooth	ناعم
local	محلي	huge	ضخم	flat	مسطح
farmer	فلاح	strong	قوي	rain	مطر
flexible	مَرِن	tail	ذيل	crops	محاصيل
dangerous	خطير	salt water	مياه مالحة		
leaf	ورقة شجر	fresh water	مياه عذبة		
bathwater	مياه الاستحمام	drinking water	مياه الشرب		

Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Definitions التعريفات

blind	can't see	أعمى / كفيف
trunk	the very long nose of an elephant	زلومة الفيل
tusk	a very long pointed tooth	ناب
spear	a long pointed stick	رمح

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
walk	يمشي	walked	discover	يكتشف	discovered
touch	يلمس	touched	reach	يصل	reached

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
meet	يقابل	met	find out	يكتشف	found out
hear	يسمع	heard	understand	يفهم	understood

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

important for	هام لـ	The Mediterranean Sea	البحر المتوسط
look like	يشبه	The Red Sea	البحر الأحمر
in the world	في العالم	It's like a wall.	إنه مثل حائط.
good at	جيد في	You're both wrong!	كلاكما مخطأ!
pointed stick	عصا مدببة	shaped like a leaf	على شكل ورقة شجر
along the road	بطول الطريق	moral of the story	مغزى القصة





Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Listen and read.

استمع واقرأ.

DESCRIBING THE ELEPHANT

وصف الفيل

A long time ago, there were six blind men who wanted to meet an elephant. They had heard many stories about these incredible animals, but each man had a different idea about what the elephant would look like.

منذ زمن بعيد، كان هناك ستة أشخاص مكفوفين يريدون مقابلة فيل. لقد سمعوا العديد من القصص عن هذه الحيوانات المدهشة، لكن كل رجل لديه فكرة مختلفة عن شكل الفيل.

One day, a local farmer was walking along the road with an elephant that worked on his farm. The farmer asked if the men would like to touch the elephant to discover how it looks. The men were very excited and walked over to the enormous animal.

في أحد الأيام، كان هناك مزارع محلي يسير على طول الطريق مع فيل يعمل في مزرعته. سأل المزارع عما إذا كان الرجال يرغبون في لمس الفيل ليكتشفوا كيف يبدو. كان الرجال متحمسين للغاية وساروا نحو الفيل الضخم.

The first man touched the side of the elephant. He said, "It's very tall and very strong. It's like a wall!"

لمس الرجل الأول جانب الفيل. وقال: "إنه طويل جدًا وقوي جدًا. إنه يشبه الجدار!"

The second man put his arms around the elephant's back leg. He said, "No, you're wrong! It's round and strong, like a tree trunk!"

وضع الرجل الثاني ذراعيه حول ساق الفيل الخلفية، وقال: " لا، أنت مخطئ! إنه مستدير وقوي، مثل جذع شجرة!"

When the third man put his hand on the elephant's trunk, he said, "You're both wrong! The elephant is long and flexible...it's just like a snake!"

وعندما وضع الرجل الثالث يده على خرطوم (زلومة) الفيل وقال: "كلاكما مخطئ! الفيل طويل ومرن.. إنه فقط مثل الثعبان!"

The fourth man put his fingers against the elephant's tusk. He said, "It's hard, long, and smooth. I think it's dangerous like a spear!"

وضع الرجل الرابع أصابعه على ناب الفيل. وقال: "إنه صلب وطويل وناعم. أعتقد أنه خطير مثل الرمح!"

Help your child listen and read the text.

ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ النص.

The fifth man was very, very tall. He reached out and touched the elephant's ear. He said, "This elephant is smooth and flat, and shaped just like a leaf!"

كان الرجل الخامس طويلًا جدًا. مد يده ولمس أذن الفيل. وقال: " هذا الفيل أملس ومسطح. وشكله مثل ورقة الشجر!"

Finally, the sixth man put his hand on the elephant's tail. He said, "This elephant is not like a wall, a spear, or a snake. It's not like a leaf or tree trunk! This elephant is just like a rope!"

وأخيرًا، وضع الرجل السادس يده على ذيل الفيل. وقال: " هذا الفيل ليس مثل الجدار أو الرمح أو الثعبان. وليس مثل ورقة الشجر أو جذع شجرة! هذا الفيل يشبه فقط الحبل!"

The farmer listened to everything the men said. He turned to them and said, "In fact, you're all correct! Each of you only touched one part of the elephant. If you stop for a moment, and listen to what you all think, you can all see what the elephant looks like."

استمع المزارع إلى كل ما قاله الرجال. والتفت إليهم وقال: " في الحقيقة، كلكم عل حق! كل واحد منكم لمس فقط جزءًا واحدًا من الفيل. ولو توقفتم للحظة واستمعتم إلى ما تعتقدونه جميعًا، يمكنكم رؤية شكل الفيل."



Answer the following questions:

1. What did the blind men want to find out?
2. What did the first blind man say about the elephant?
3. Which part of the elephant was like a tree trunk? Why?
4. Why did the fourth blind man think the elephant's tusk was like a spear?
5. Which part of the elephant was like a huge leaf?

Help your child listen and read the text.

ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ النص.

Activities

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False. استمع واكتب (T) صح أو (F) خطأ

1. A local doctor was walking along the road. ( )
2. The man was walking with an elephant. ( )
3. The men were very excited. ( )
4. The men walked over to the small animal. ( )

2 Listen and complete. استمع وأكمل

1. The farmer listened to everything the .... said.
2. In fact all men are ....!
3. Each of you only touched one part of the ....
4. If you stop for a ... you can all see what the elephant looks like.

3 Read and match. اقرأ وصل

1. I drink eight glasses	a. animal in the world.
2. The elephant is the biggest	b. of fresh water a day.
3. The elephant is long	c. like a spear.
4. The six blind men wanted	d. and flexible.
5. I think it's dangerous	e. to meet an elephant.

1-( ) 2-( ) 3-( ) 4-( ) 5-( )

4 Read and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d. اقرأ واختر الإجابة الصحيحة

1. The water of rivers is ....
   a) bad b) fresh c) salt d) spicy

2. He is .... He can't see.
   a) blind b) huge c) fast d) flexible
3. The elephant is a .... animal.
   a) little b) huge c) small d) short
4. I have ten fingers on my ....
   a) hands b) feet c) eyes d) legs
5. A .... is a long pointed stick.
   a) spare b) chop c) spear d) space
6. A .... is the very long nose of an elephant.
   a) trunk b) tail c) trick d) truck
7. A .... is a very long pointed nose.
   a) test b) task c) tusk d) tooth
8. The Red Sea has .... water.
   a) salt b) fresh c) thin d) sweet

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences. أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوّن جملًا صحيحة

1. water - Why - important - very - is - ?
   ....
2. 8 - a day - I - water - glasses - drink - of - .
   ....
3. the elephant - like - look - What - does - ?
   ....
4. a rope - like - is - This - elephant - .
   ....

6 Read the following text and answer the questions.

اقرأ النص التالي وأجب عن الأسئلة.

A long time ago, there were six blind men who wanted to meet an elephant. They had heard many stories about these incredible animals. The farmer asked if the men would like to touch the elephant to discover how it looks. The first man said, "It's very tall and very strong. It's like a wall!". The second man said, "No, you're wrong! It's round and strong, like a tree trunk!". The third man said, "You're both wrong! The elephant is long and flexible...it's just like a snake!". The fourth man said, "It's hard, long, and smooth. I think it's dangerous like a spear!". The fifth man said, "This elephant is smooth and flat, and shaped just like a leaf!" Finally, the sixth man said, "This elephant is not like a wall, a spear, or a snake. It's not like a leaf or tree trunk! This elephant is just like a rope!".

A) Choose the correct answer from a,b, c or d.

1. The underlined word "blind" means they can't ....
   a) read b) see c) talk d) taste
2. The text is a bout a/an ....
   a) lion b) monkey c) tiger d) elephant

B) Answer the following questions.

3. What does the second man think of the elephant?
   ....
4. Who thinks that the elephant is like a spear?
   ....

7 Write a paragraph of about (40) words.

اكتب فقرة من (40) كلمة.

"The elephant"

Guiding words: (wild - huge - zoo - grass)

....
....
....

Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.



HOW ARE YOU?

Main Vocabulary كلمات أساسية

a cut	جرح	take medicine	يتناول الدواء
a bandage	ضمادة	playground	ملعب
come in	تفضل بالدخول	stay home	يبقى بالبيت
clean	ينظف	fall over	يسقط على

Listen and read.

استمع واقرأ.

Ashraf : Hello, Doctor. I don't feel well.
مرحبًا يا دكتور. أشعر أنني لست بخير.

Doctor : What's the matter, Ashraf? Do you have a headache?
ما الأمر يا أشرف؟ هل أنت مصاب بالصداع؟

Ashraf : No, Doctor. I don't have a headache.
لا، يا دكتور. لست مصابًا بالصداع.

Doctor : Do you have a stomachache?
هل لديك ألم في المعدة؟

Ashraf : No, Doctor. I don't have a stomachache.
لا، يا دكتور. ليس لدي ألم في المعدة.

Doctor : Do you have a toothache?
هل لديك ألم في الأسنان؟

Ashraf : No, Doctor. I don't have a toothache. I have ... I have ... Achoo!
لا، يا دكتور. ليس لدي ألم في الأسنان. لدي ..... لدي..... أتشوا!

Doctor : Oh, dear! You have a cold. Stay home, sleep well, and take this medicine.
أوه يا عزيزي! أنت مصاب بنزلة برد. ابق في المنزل ونم جيدًا وتناول هذا الدواء.

Help your child listen and read the dialog between a doctor and a patient. ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ الحوار بين الدكتور والمريض

Verb to "have" in the present simple

- We use (have) to talk about illness.

نستخدم الفعل (have) بمعنى (لديه / عنده / مصاب) مع المرض.

Form: التكوين:

I / They / You / We / Plural noun ⟶ have

e.g. I have a headache.

He / She / It / Singular noun ⟶ has

e.g. Amr has a stomachache.

Negative: النفي:

I / They / You / We / Plural noun → don't have

e.g. I don't have a sore throat.

He / She / It / Singular noun → doesn't have

e.g. He doesn't have a stomachache.

(Yes / No) question: السؤال بـ (هل):

Do + I / they / you / we / plural noun → have....?

e.g. Do you have a headache?

- Yes, I do. - No, I don't.

Does + he / she / it / singular noun → have....?

e.g. Does Noha have a toothache?

- Yes, she does. - No, she doesn't.

Help your child learn some language.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعلم بعض القواعد اللغوية.

Wh- question السؤال بكلمة استفهام:

Q.W + (do / does) + subject (الفاعل) + have......?

e.g. What do you have? - I have a cold.

e.g. What does she have? - She has a backache.

1 Read and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

اقرأ واختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. He has a .... on his arm.
   a) cut b) cup c) cute d) coat
2. Don't worry, I'll .... your cut.
   a) eat b) cut c) clean d) break
3. Stay home and .... this medicine.
   a) give b) take c) do d) break
4. I'll put a .... on the cut.
   a) fridge b) bridge c) bandage d) salt
5. .... you have a headache?
   a) Do b) Does c) Are d) Have
6. She .... a stomachache.
   a) is b) has c) have d) was

2 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوّن جملًا صحيحة.

1. you - Do - an earache - have - ?

....

2. sore - a - I - throat - have - .

....

3. Nader - have - headache - Does - a - ?

....

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.



Lesson (3 / B) A SPECIAL HOSPITAL

Main Vocabulary كلمات أساسية

relative	أحد الأقارب	injection	حقنة
unwell	ليس (على ما يرام / بصحة جيدة)	patient	مريض
staff	فريق العمل	helpful	متعاون
crowded	مزدحم	corridor	طرقة / ممر

Extra Vocabulary كلمات إضافية

city	مدينة كبيرة	alone	بمفرده	wonderful	رائع
member	عضو	busy	مشغول / مزدحم	hospital	مستشفى
India	دولة الهند	special	خاص / مميز	sick	مريض

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Present		Past	Present		Past
treat	يعالج	treated	teach	يدرس	taught
change	يغير	changed	become	يصبح	became
travel	يسافر	traveled	know	يعرف	knew
return	يعود	returned	tell	يخبر	told

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

look after	يعتني بـ	Not only........but also	ليس فقط.......ولكن أيضًا
care for	يعتني بـ	from all over the world	من جميع أنحاء العالم
give injection	يعطي حقنة	in the playground	في الملعب
instead of	بدلًا من	turn ... into	يحول إلى

Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.



Look and read. انظر واقرأ.

A SPECIAL HOSPITAL
مستشفى متميزة



In a hospital in Bangalore, a city in southern India, there are many patients. The hospital treats patients from all over the country. With every patient, there are about ten family members.

في مستشفى في بنجالور، وهي مدينة في جنوب الهند، هناك العديد من المرضى. تعالج المستشفى المرضى من جميع أنحاء البلاد. مع كل مريض، هناك حوالي عشرة أفراد من العائلة.

In India, it is unusual for a sick person to go to the hospital alone. Family usually go with their unwell relative. This means that the hospital is often very crowded and busy. But instead of telling family members that they can't visit their sick relatives, the staff at this hospital do something special. They turn a problem into something wonderful.

في الهند، من غير المعتاد أن يذهب المريض إلى المستشفى وحده. تذهب العائلة عادة مع قريبهم المريض. وهذا يعني أن المستشفى غالبًا ما تكون مزدحمة ومشغولة جدًا. لكن بدلًا من إخبار أفراد الأسرة بأنهم لا يستطيعون زيارة أقاربهم المرضى يقوم الموظفون في المستشفى بعمل شئ مميز. إنهم يحولون المشكلة إلى شئ رائع.

They have classes to teach the family to look after the sick person. For example, some people learn how to change bandages and others learn how to give injections.

لديهم فصول لتعليم الأسرة الاعتناء بالشخص المريض. علي سبيل المثال، يتعلم بعض الأشخاص كيف يغيرون الضمادات ويتعلم آخرون كيفية إعطاء الحقن.

Each afternoon, staff from the hospital turn the corridors into classrooms.

بعد ظهر كل يوم، يقوم موظفوا المستشفى بتحويل الممرات إلى فصول دراسية.

The nurses become teachers and the family members - and sometimes even the patients - become the students. Not only does this help the hospital staff, but it also helps the families to care for their relatives when they go home. The staff know that the lessons work because not as many patients return to the hospital now.

وتصبح الممرضات معلمات، ويصبح أفراد الأسرة - وأحيانًا المرضى - طلابًا. هذا لا يساعد فقط موظفي المستشفى، ولكنه أيضًا يساعد العائلات في رعاية أقاربهم عند عودتهم إلى المنزل. يعلم الموظفون أن الدروس تنجح حيث أنه لا يعود الكثير من المرضى إلى المستشفى الآن.

Help your child listen and read the text.
ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ النص.

The Prefixes السوابق / البادئات

- We can use the prefix (un-) to make the opposite of an adjective: يمكن أن نستخدم البادئة (un-) لتكوين عكس صفة

un	well	بخير	unwell	غير معافي
	usual	عادي	unusual	غير عادي
	fit	لائق بدنيًا	unfit	غير لائق بدنيًا
	safe	آمن	unsafe	غير آمن

- Some other prefixes that are used to show the opposite are (ir- / il- / im-) . بعض البادئات الأخرى التي تستخدم لتكوين العكس هي (im- / il- / ir-).

Prefix	Use	Root word	Opposite word
ir	When the word begins with "r"	responsible مسئول	irresponsible غير مسئول
		regular منتظم	irregular غير منتظم
im	When the word begins with "m" or "p"	possible ممكن	impossible مستحيل
		moral أخلاقي	immoral غير أخلاقي
il	When the word begins with "l"	legal قانوني	illegal غير قانوني

1 Rewrite these sentences so they mean the opposite. Use the prefix (un-).

1. Tarek is happy. ....
2. The bridge is safe. ....
3. Dad is fit. ....

2 Add the prefix (ir-, il-, or im-) to these words.

1. legal .... 2. polite ....
4. moral .... 4. regular ....

Help your child learn and use the prefixes (un, il, ir and im).
ساعد طفلك أن يتعلم ويستخدم البادئات (il, im, ir, un)

Activities

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False. استمع واكتب (T) صح أو (F) خطأ.

1. The text is about a club in India. ( )
2. The hospital is a very busy place. ( )
3. Many people go to the hospital with their unwell relatives. ( )
4. A few patients go to hospital now. ( )

2 Listen and complete. استمع وأكمل.

1. Nahla fell over in the ....
2. Nahla has a cut on her ....
3. The nurse will put a .... on the cut.
4. Nahla thanks ....

3 Read and match. اقرأ وصل

1. There are many	a. very crowded.
2. The hospital is	b. patients in the hospital.
3. Bangalore is a city	c. in the playground.
4. Nahla fell over	d. in southern India.

1-( ) 2-( ) 3-( ) 4-( )

4 Reorder the words to make correct sentences. أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوّن جملًا صحيحة.

1. a - Ali - throat - sore - has - .
....
2. over - in - My - the - fell - brother - playground - .
....
3. she - have - a headache - Does - ?
....

Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

5 Read the following text and answer the questions.

اقرأ النص التالي وأجب عن الأسئلة.

In India, it is unusual for a sick person to go to the hospital alone. Family usually go with their unwell relative. This means that the hospital is often very crowded and busy. But instead of telling family members that they can't visit their sick relatives, the staff at this hospital do something special. They turn a problem into something wonderful. They have classes to teach the family to look after the sick person. For example, some people learn how to change bandages and others learn how to give injections.

A) Choose the correct answer from a,b, c or d.

1. The word "unwell" means ....
   a) fine b) cool c) sick d) nice
2. The hospital is always .... and busy.
   a) quiet b) crowded c) happy d) empty

B) Answer the following questions.

3. What do the staff teach the visitors?
....
4. What do people learn to do with sick relatives?
....

6 Read and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

اقرأ واختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. The hospital treats ....
   a) doctors b) nurses c) patients d) teachers
2. It's .... for a sick person to go to the hospital alone.
   a) happy b) bad c) sad d) unusual
3. People learn to .... injections to patients in hospitals.
   a) give b) stay c) make d) do
4. The .... is a group of people that work together.
   a) injections b) patients c) relatives d) staff
5. Omar is happy but Tarek is ....
   a) illegal b) irregular c) unhappy d) unfit
6. The bridge is dangerous. It's ....
   a) safe b) unsafe c) impolite d) irregular
7. Mum is fit but dad is ....
   a) unhappy b) happy c) unfit d) sad

7 Write a paragraph of about (40) words.

اكتب فقرة من (40) كلمة

"Illnesses"

Guiding words:

(have - headache - stay - toothache - dentist - a cold - medicine)

....
....
....
....
....
....

8 Punctuate the following.

ضع علامات الترقيم على ما يلي.

⇨ why do you take medicine
....

⇨ she doesn t have a cold.
....

Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

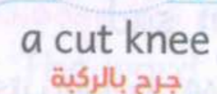
Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.



Lesson (4) THE POWER OF HONEY

Main Vocabulary كلمات أساسية





a cut knee جرح بالركبة



sunburn كريم لحروق الشمس



sunscreen كريم واقي من الشمس



pills أقراص الدواء



honey عسل



lemon ليمون



bandage ضمادة



bee نحلة

Extra Vocabulary كلمات إضافية

exactly	بالضبط	medical care	عناية طبية
injury	إصابة	perhaps	ربما
illness	مرض	recently	حديثًا / في الآونة الأخيرة
substance	مادة	scientist	عالم / عالمة
types	أنواع	cupboard	دولاب مطبخ
skin	جلد	power	قوة

Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Definitions التعريفات

treatment	medical care to help you get better	علاج
wound	an injury that damages your skin	جرح
bacteria	very small things that can make you ill	بكتيريا
heal	to get better	يلتئم

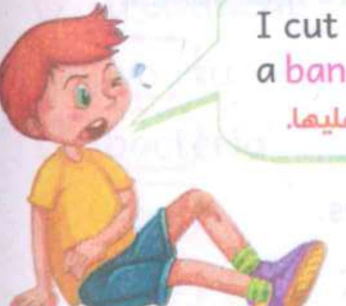
Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Present		Past	Present		Past
contain	يحتوي	contained	mix	يخلط	mixed
kill	يقتل	killed	damage	يتلف	damaged
use	يستخدم	used	know	يعرف	knew

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

enjoy + v + ing	يستمتع بـ	sweet basbousa	بسبوسة حلوة المذاق
used as	يستخدم كـ	for breakfast	على الإفطار
treat illness	يعالج المرض	for thousands of years	لآلاف السنين
a jar of honey	برطمان عسل	good for	جيد لـ
on earth	على الأرض	make honey	يصنع العسل

Look and read. انظر واقرأ.



I cut my knee last week. My grandma put a bandage on it.

جرحت ركبتي الأسبوع الماضي. وضعت لي جدتي ضمادة عليها.

Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Look and read. انظر واقرأ

Do you like honey? Perhaps you enjoy eating it for breakfast. Or maybe you enjoy it in a sweet basbousa. But did you know that honey isn't only a food? It is also used as a treatment for some injuries and illnesses.

هل تحبين العسل؟ ربما نستمتع بتناوله على الإفطار، أو ربما نستمتع به في بسبوسة حلوة المذاق. ولكن هل تعلم أن العسل ليس مجرد طعام؟ إنه يستخدم أيضًا كعلاج لبعض الإصابات والأمراض.

In some countries, honey has been used by doctors for thousands of years. It was first used to treat wounds by Egyptian doctors around 5,000 years ago. Recently, scientists have tried to find out exactly why honey is so good for healing wounds and treating illnesses.

في بعض البلدان، يستخدم الأطباء العسل منذ آلاف السنين. تم استخدامه لأول مرة لعلاج الجروح من قبل الأطباء المصريين منذ حوالي 5000 عام. في الآونة الأخيرة، حاول العلماء بالضبط معرفة سبب كون العسل مفيدًا جدًا في التئام الجروح وعلاج الأمراض.



Scientists know that some types of honey contain things that can help to kill bacteria. This helps wounds to heal more quickly. You must be careful, however. The honey that doctors use is a special honey only that is safe to use as a treatment. So, if you have a jar of honey in your cupboard, you can mix it with milk to make your cough better, but don't put it on your cut knee!

يعرف العلماء أن بعض أنواع العسل تحتوي على أشياء يمكن أن تساعد في قتل البكتيريا. وهذا يساعد الجروح على الالتئام بسرعة أكبر. ومع ذلك يجب أن تكون حذرًا. إن العسل الذي يستخدمه الأطباء هو عسل خاص وآمن للاستخدام كعلاج. لذا، إذا كان لديك برطمان من العسل في خزانتك، يمكنك مزجه مع الحليب لتحسين السعال (الكحة). ولكن لا تضعه على ركبتك المجروحة!

Now read the full article. Check (√) the facts that are mentioned:

1. Bees make honey. ( )
2. Honey is the sweetest substance on Earth. ( )
3. Doctors have used honey for thousands of years. ( )
4. Some types of honey can kill bacteria. ( )



Help your child read the text.
ساعد طفلك ويقرأ النص.

1 Read and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d. اقرأ واختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. When I have a .... throat, I can't talk.
   a) sir b) sore c) sow d) sort
2. Do you have a cut .... ?
   a) knot b) knit c) knee d) knight
3. We use .... to protect us from the sun.
   a) pills b) sunscreen c) screen d) bandage
4. I cut my knee last week. My grandma put a .... on it.
   a) lemon b) bandage c) poster d) pill
5. Honey is used as a .... for some injuries.
   a) bacteria b) wound c) treatment d) sunscreen
6. Honey is so good for .... wounds.
   a) heating b) taking c) healing d) hating
7. I have a .... of honey.
   a) jar b) piece c) spoon d) fork
8. .... make honey.
   a) Bees b) Elephants c) Monkeys d) Lions
9. Doctors used .... for treatment.
   a) honey b) water c) oil d) salt

2 Match the words with their meanings. صِل الكلمات بمعانيها.

1. treatment	a. to get better
2. wound	b. very small things that can make you ill
3. bacteria	c. medical care to help you get better
4. heal	d. an injury that damages your skin

1- ( ) 2- ( ) 3- ( ) 4- ( )

Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

PRONUNCIATION

/f/



How to make the /f/ sound:
كيف تنطق الصوت /f/

- Rest your top teeth on your lower lip. أرخِ أسنانك العليا على الشفة السفلى.
- Blow, but don't use your voice! انفخ لكن لا تستخدم صوتك.

- few عدد قليل

/v/








How to make the /v/ sound:
كيف تنطق الصوت /v/

- Rest your top teeth on your lower lip. أرخِ أسنانك العليا على الشفة السفلى.
- Blow, but do use your voice! انفخ ولكن استخدم صوتك.

- very جدًا
- save يحفظ
- live يعيش

- I have a pet frog.
- I have a very long scarf.
- Hany is a vet.
- Do you like vegetables?

Help your child understand the difference between /f/ and /v/ sounds. ساعد طفلك أن يفهم الفرق بين أصوات /f/ و /v/.

1 Read and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.
اقرأ واختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. When it is hot, I turn on the ....
   a) fun b) fan c) foot d) tooth
2. A new .... grows on the tree.
   a) leaf b) loaf c) life d) lift
3. A few friends saw the very fine .... of the trees.
   a) view b) few c) safe d) ferry
4. The .... is very fast.
   a) view b) fun c) ferry d) tree
5. It's .... to save your money here.
   a) happy b) sad c) angry d) safe

2 Read and match.
اقرأ وصِل.

1. Hany is a	a. frog.
2. Do you like	b. vet.
3. We like watching	c. vegetables?
4. I have a pet	d. television.

1- ( ) 2- ( ) 3- ( ) 4- ( )

3 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.
أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوّن جملًا صحيحة.

1. here - It's - safe - save - money - your - to - .
....
2. a long - have - Do - scarf - you - ?
....
3. she - television - watching - Does - like - ?
....

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

MATH

A bar chart التمثيل البياني بالأعمدة

A bar chart is a way of showing information.

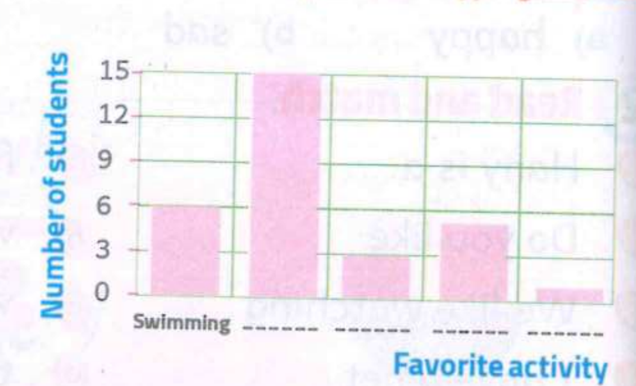
التمثيل البياني بالأعمدة هو طريقة لعرض المعلومات.

Look and read. Then label the bar chart:

Last week, 30 students were asked about their favorite free-time activity to stay healthy. Here is the result of their survey. Which favorite activity was enjoyed by the biggest number of students?

في الأسبوع الماضي تم سؤال ٣٠ طالبًا عن أنشطة وقت الفراغ المفضلة لديهم. وها هي نتيجة الدراسة. أي نشاط مفضل لأكبر عدد من الطلاب؟

Favorite activity	No. of students
Swimming	6
Football	15
Reading	3
Taking long walks	5
Cooking	1



Now use this table to complete the bar chart:

Favorite food	No. of students
Ful medames	6
Koshari	6
Kofta	7
Fiteer baladi	9
Shawerma	5

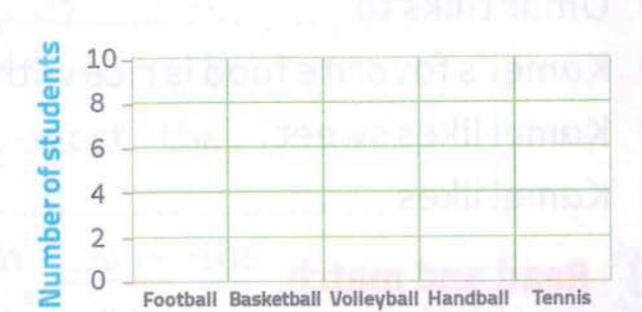


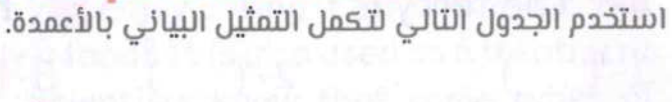
Help your child read and learn about a bar chart.
ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ ويتعلم عن التمثيل البياني بالأعمدة.

1 Look at the bar chart, shade then answer the questions.

انظر إلى التمثيل البياني بالأعمدة، ظلل ثم أجب عن الأسئلة.

Favorite sport	No. of students
Football	8
Basketball	10
Volleyball	6
Handball	4
Tennis	2



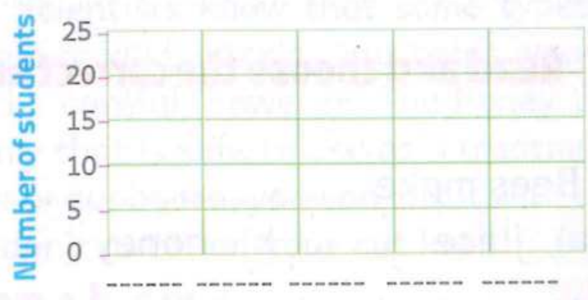


1. What's the most favorite sport?
2. What's the least favorite sport?
3. How many students prefer volleyball?

2 Use the following table to complete the bar chart.

استخدم الجدول التالي لتكمل التمثيل البياني بالأعمدة.

Favorite subject	No. of students
English	25
Math	20
Art	5
History	10
Science	15





Activities

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False.

استمع واكتب (T) صح أو (F) خطأ.

1. Honey has been used by teachers.
2. Honey was first used to treat wounds.
3. Doctors used honey to treat wounds 5.000 years ago.
4. Honey is bad for healing wounds.

Help your child read and learn about a bar chart.
ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ ويتعلم عن التمثيل البياني بالأعمدة.

2 Listen and complete. استمع وأكمل

1. Omar talks to ....
2. Kamel's favorite food is rice with ....
3. Kamel likes sweet ....
4. Kamel likes .... juice.

3 Read and match. اقرأ وصل

1. I cut my knee
2. I enjoy eating
3. Is there a fan
4. The ferry is

a. in the very big van?
b. very fast.
c. last week.
d. honey for breakfast.

1- (   )   2- (   )   3- (   )   4- (   )

4 Read and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d. اقرأ واختر الإجابة الصحيحة

1. Bees make ....
   a) juice   b) honey   c) water   d) oil
2. Honey is the .... substance on Earth.
   a) sweetest   b) worst   c) fastest   d) slowest
3. .... use a special honey as treatment.
   a) Teachers   b) Vets   c) Doctors   d) Bakers
4. Some types of honey can .... bacteria.
   a) live   b) kill   c) break   d) make
5. You can mix honey with milk to make your .... better.
   a) calf   b) cough   c) laugh   d) enough

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences. أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوّن جملًا صحيحة.

1. you - Do - vegetables - like - ?
....
2. popular - is - Which - food - most - the - ?
....
3. lovely - leaf - tree - the - on - Leave - the - .
....
4. We - watching - like - television - .
....

6 Read the following text and answer the questions. اقرأ النص التالي وأجب عن الأسئلة.

Do you like honey? Perhaps you enjoy eating it for breakfast. But did you know that honey isn't only a food? It is also used as a treatment for some injuries and illnesses. Scientists know that some types of honey contain things that can help to kill bacteria. This helps wounds to heal more quickly. You must be careful, however. The honey that doctors use is a special honey only that is safe to use as a treatment. So, if you have a jar of honey in your cupboard, you can mix it with milk to make your cough better, but don't put it on your cut knee!

A) Choose the correct answer from a,b, c or d.

1. The underlined word "quickly" means ....
   a) slow   b) fast   c) nice   d) happy
2. Some types of honey can help .... bacteria.
   a) do   b) make   c) take   d) kill

B) Answer the following questions.

3. What's the main idea of the text?
....
4. How can you make your cough better?
....



- WRITING - PROJECT

Lessons (5 & 6)

Main Vocabulary كلمات أساسية

balanced diet	نظام غذائي متوازن	insect bite cream	كريم لدغ الحشرات
experts	خبراء	safety pins	دبابيس أمان
bandage	ضمادة	rubber bands	رباط مطاطي
sunscreen	كريم واقي من الشمس	medical gloves	قفازات طبية
scissors	مقص	cleansing wipes	مناديل مبللة
soap	صابون		

Extra Vocabulary كلمات إضافية

desert	صحراء	poster	ملصق	presentation	عرض / تقديم
pack	يعبأ	headings	عناوين	important	هام
useful	نافع / مفيد	decide	يقرر	especially	خاصة / خصوصًا
remember	يتذكر				

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
need	يحتاج	needed	enjoy	يستمتع	enjoyed
check	يفحص	checked	remember	يتذكر	remembered

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
spend	يقضي	spent	make	يصنع	made
keep	يحفظ	kept	take	يأخذ	took

Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

first-aid kit	صندوق الاسعافات الأولية	a school trip	رحلة مدرسية
In addition to	بالإضافة إلى	make sure	يتأكد
plenty of water	الكثير من الماء	responsible for	مسئول عن
a great way	طريقة رائعة	focus on	يركز على
do exercise	يتمرن	at school	في المدرسة
lots of	الكثير من	go to bed	يذهب للفراش
enough sleep	نوم كافي	work well	يعمل بشكل جيد
in case	في حالة	at the end	في النهاية

Healthy things to do
أشياء صحية تفعلها

playing sport	لعب الرياضة
eating vegetables	تناول الخضراوات
reading books	قراءة الكتب
getting enough sleep	الحصول على قسط كافي من النوم
visiting a doctor	زيارة الطبيب
spending time with friends	قضاء وقت مع الأصدقاء
drinking plenty of water	شرب الكثير من الماء

Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Read the following presentation. اقرأ العرض التقديمي التالي.



My presentation today is about staying healthy. It is really important to eat healthy foods like fruit and vegetables and to have a balanced diet. There are lots of other things that we can do to look after our health.

موضوع عرضي اليوم عن البقاء بصحة جيدة. من المهم تناول الأطعمة الصحية مثل الفاكهة والخضراوات واتباع نظام غذائي متوازن. هناك الكثير من الأشياء الأخرى التي يمكننا القيام بها للاعتناء بصحتنا.

You should do some exercise every day. It's very important to keep your body moving. Playing sport at school or with friends is a good way to exercise.

يجب عليك القيام ببعض التمارين كل يوم. من المهم جدًا أن تبقى جسمك في حركة. إن ممارسة الرياضة في المدرسة أو مع الأصدقاء طريقة جيدة للتمرين.

Another thing you can do is to go to bed early. It's important to get enough sleep. Experts think you should get between eight and nine hours of sleep every night.

شيء آخر يمكنك القيام به وهو الذهاب إلى الفراش مبكرًا. من المهم الحصول على قسط كافٍ من النوم. يعتقد الخبراء أنك يجب أن تنام ما بين ثماني وتسع ساعات كل ليلة.

In addition to this, one of the best ways to stay healthy is to spend time with your friends. It's not only your body that you need to keep healthy, you should make time to focus on being happy, too. Spending time with your family and friends is a great way to do this.

بالإضافة إلى ذلك، فإن أحد أفضل الطرق للبقاء بصحة جيدة هو أن تقضي وقتًا مع أصدقائك. ليس فقط جسمك هو ما تحتاج للحفاظ على صحتك، بل يجب أن تخصص وقتًا للتركيز على السعادة أيضًا. إن قضاء وقت مع عائلتك وأصدقائك طريقة رائعة للقيام بذلك.

A model paragraph

"Staying healthy"

To stay healthy, it's very important to drink plenty of water. This keeps your body working well. It's especially important if it's a very hot day or if you're exercising.

Help your child write a short paragraph about staying healthy.
ساعد طفلك أن يكتب فقرة إنشائية قصيرة عن البقاء بصحة جيدة.

Activities

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False. استمع واكتب (T) صح أو (F) خطأ.

1. It's important to drink plenty of water. ( )
2. Drinking water doesn't keep your body working well. ( )
3. You should have unhealthy food. ( )
4. Sports make us healthy and fit. ( )

2 Read and match. اقرأ وصل.

1. You should get	a. about staying healthy.
2. You should drink	b. enough sleep.
3. My presentation is	c. plenty of water.
4. Do you spend	d. a good way to exercise.
5. Playing sport is	e. time with your friends?

1-( ) 2-( ) 3-( ) 4-( ) 5-( )

3 Read and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d. اقرأ واختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. Asmaa says it's important to have .... diet.
   a) different b) bad c) unhealthy d) balanced
2. Asmaa says that .... sport is a good way to exercise.
   a) having b) playing c) eating d) making
3. You should .... between 8 and 9 hours every night.
   a) eat b) sleep c) run d) swim
4. You should make time to focus .... being happy.
   a) on b) in c) at d) of

Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

5. .... think you should get enough sleep every night.
   a) Teachers b) Vets c) Nurses d) Experts
6. My presentation today is about .... healthy.
   a) studying b) doing c) staying d) running
7. You should drink .... of water.
   a) plant b) planet c) plan d) plenty
8. Your class is responsible .... packing the first-aid kit.
   a) for b) to c) at d) on
9. Take .... in case someone cuts their knee.
   a) bandages b) soap c) safety pins d) scissors
10. Nurses and doctors wear medical ....
   a) soap b) gloves c) wipes d) bandages

4 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوّن جملًا صحيحة.

1. should - You - foods - healthy - eat - .
   ....
2. of - you - Do - plenty - water - drink - ?
   ....
3. spend - his friends - with - time - Omar - Does - ?
   ....

5 Write a paragraph of about (40) words.

اكتب فقرة من (40) كلمة.

"How to stay healthy"

Guiding elements: - Things to do. - Things not to do.

....
....
....

Review on Unit (8)

Vocabulary كلمات

Illnesses أمراض

earache	ألم في الأذن	a cough	سعال / كحة	a cold	برد
toothache	ألم في الأسنان	stomachache	ألم في المعدة	headache	صداع
backache	ألم في الظهر	a sore throat	التهاب الحلق		

Science & Health العلوم والصحة

river	نهر	pills	أقراص الدواء	flexible	مَرِن
stream	جدول مائي	injection	حقنة طبية	relatives	أقارب
glacier	نهر جليدي	patient	مريض	expert	خبير
lake	بحيرة	unwell	معتل / ليس بخير / مريض	honey	عسل
ocean	محيط	staff	فريق عمل	medicine	دواء
bandage	ضمادة	corridor	ممر / طرقة	lemon	ليمون
a cut	جرح	sunscreen	كريم واقي من الشمس	helpful	متعاون

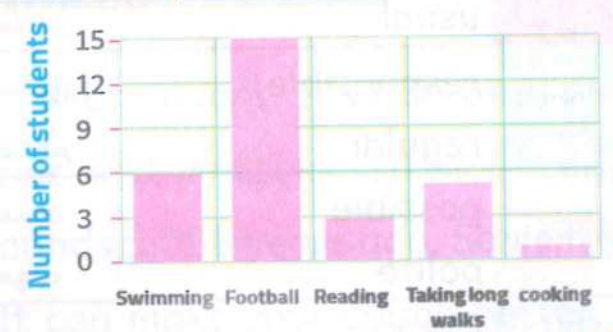
Pronunciation

fan	leaf	life	ferry	few	safe
van	leave	live	very	view	save

Math

Bar charts التمثيل البياني بالأعمدة

Favorite activity	No. of students
Swimming	6
Football	15
Reading	3
Taking long walks	5
Cooking	1



Verb to "have" in the present simple

- We use (have) to talk about illness.

نستخدم الفعل (have) بمعنى (لديه / عنده / مصاب) مع المرض.

Form: التكوين:

Subject + (have / has) ...

e.g. I have a headache.

Negative: النفي:

Subject + (don't have / doesn't have) ...

e.g. I don't have a sore throat.

(Yes / No) question: السؤال بـ (هل):

(Do / Does) + subject + have..?

e.g. Do you have a headache? 🙂 - Yes, I do. ☹ - No, I don't.

Wh- question السؤال بكلمة استفهام:

Q.W + (do / does) + subject + have..?

e.g. What do you have? e.g. What does she have?

Opposite Prefixes بادئات تعطي عكس المعنى

un	well	بخير	unwell	غير معافي
	usual	عادي	unusual	غير عادي
ir	responsible	مسئول	irresponsible	غير مسئول
	regular	منتظم	irregular	غير منتظم
im	possible	ممكن	impossible	مستحيل
	polite	مؤدب	impolite	غير مؤدب
il	legal	قانوني	illegal	غير قانوني



Write a paragraph of about (40) words. اكتب فقرة من (40) كلمة.

"Illnesses"

There are a lot of illnesses. We can have headache, earache, backache, stomachache, toothache, cold and sore throat. When we have a headache, we should have a rest. When we have a toothache, we should go to the dentist. When we have a cold, we should stay home and take medicine. When we have sore throat, we can't talk.

"Staying healthy"

It's important to eat healthy foods like fruit and vegetables and to have a balanced diet. We should do some exercise every day. Playing sport is a good way to exercise. We should have enough sleep every night. We should spend time with our friends and family, too.

"Honey"

We enjoy eating honey for breakfast. It's also used as a treatment for some injuries and illnesses. It was used by Egyptian doctors to treat wounds 5.000 years ago. Some types of honey can kill bacteria. It can make your cough better.

Dictation on Unit (8)

Lesson (1)

Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning
	صداع		ألم في الأذن
	زكام / نزلة برد		ألم في الأسنان
	كحة / سعال		ألم في الظهر
	التهاب الحلق		ألم في المعدة

Lesson (2)

Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning
	محيط		نهر جليدي
	حبل		جدول مائي
	محاصيل		بحيرة
	أصابع اليد		نهر

Lesson (3)

Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning
	ملعب		جرح
	متعاون		ضمادة
	مريض		ينظف
	حقنة طبية		يتناول الدواء

Lesson (4)

Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning
	ليمون		أقراص الدواء
	عسل		كريم واقي من الشمس
	نحلة		كريم لحروق الشمس
	مرض		جرح بالركبة

Lessons (5 & 6)

Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning
	صابون		رباط مطاطي
	ملصق		جوانتي طبي
	يقرر		مناديل مبللة
	صندوق الاسعافات الأولية		مقص

Help your child dictate these words.

ساعد طفلك في إملاء هذه الكلمات.

Activities on Unit (8)

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False. استمع واكتب (T) صح أو (F) خطأ.

1. Doctors say that some types of honey can kill bacteria. ( )
2. Honey helps to heal wounds quickly. ( )
3. The honey that doctors use is a normal honey. ( )
4. Honey with oil can make your cough better. ( )

2 Listen and complete. استمع وأكمل.

1. Amr has a ....
2. He eats lots of ....
3. He should go to the ....
4. Amr talks to ....

3 Read and match. اقرأ وصل.

1. It's very important
2. Some types of honey
3. My grandma put
4. Do you have an
5. I fell over

a. in the playground.
b. to drink plenty of water.
c. can kill bacteria.
d. a bandage on the cut.
e. earache?

1-( ) 2-( ) 3-( ) 4-( ) 5-( )

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

4 Read the following text and answer the questions.

اقرأ النص التالي وأجب عن الأسئلة.

It is really important to eat healthy foods like fruit and vegetables and to have a balanced diet. There are lots of other things that we can do to look after our health. You should do some exercise every day. Playing sport at school or with friends is a good way to exercise.

Another thing you can do is to go to bed early. It's important to get enough sleep. Experts think you should get between eight and nine hours of sleep every night. In addition to this, one of the best ways to stay healthy is to spend time with your friends. It's not only your body that you need to keep healthy, you should make time to focus on being happy, too. Spending time with your family and friends is a great way to do this.

A) Choose the correct answer from a,b, c or d.

1. The adjective "healthy" means .... for our bodies.
   a) good b) bad c) ugly d) late
2. .... think you should get enough sleep every night.
   a) Doctors b) Experts c) Students d) Nurses

B) Answer the following questions.

3. How many hours should we sleep every night?

....

4. Who do we need to spend time with?

....

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوّن جملًا صحيحة.

1. a sore - Do - have - you - throat - ?

....

2. of - kill - Some - bacteria - honey - types - can - .

....

3. you - the - club - a good day - at - Did - have - ?

....

4. I'm - worried - friends - my - about - .

....

6 Punctuate the following.

ضع علامات الترقيم على ما يلي.

⇨ is there a fan in the big van

....

⇨ you should go to the dentist

....

7 Write a paragraph of about (40) words.

اكتب فقرة من (40) كلمة.

"Staying healthy"

Guiding questions:

- What things should you do?
- What things shouldn't you do?

....

....

....

....

....

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Unit 9 My favorite animal
حيواني المفضل



In this unit the student will ...
في هذه الوحدة الطالب سوف......

- listen, read, research, and write about animals.
  يستمع ويقرأ ويبحث ويكتب عن الحيوانات.
- listen and read about a trip to a wildlife park.
  يستمع ويقرأ عن رحلة إلى متنزه للحياة البرية.
- learn how to say /w/ and /v/ sounds.
  يتعلم كيفية نطق الصوتين /w/ و /v/.
- write an email about an unusual animal.
  يكتب رسالة إلكترونية عن حيوان غير عادي.
- research and make an infographic about animals in a habitat.
  يبحث ويقوم بعمل مخطط عن حيوانات في موطن معيشتهم.



Listen and say. استمع وقل.



kangaroo
كنغر



panda
دب الباندا

penguin
طائر البطريق



dolphin
دولفين



Animals
الحيوانات



bat
خفاش



snail
حلزون / الكسول



parrot
ببغاء



lion
أسد

Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Extra Vocabulary كلمات إضافية

garden حديقة	beautiful جميل	colorful ملوّن
rainforest غابة مطيرة	pouch كيس / جراب	ocean محيط
different مختلف	bamboo خيزران	wonderful رائع
awesome مدهش / مذهل	wildlife park متنزه للحياة البرية	

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past
jump	يقفز	jumped
stay	يمكث	stayed
repeat	يكرر	repeated
look	يبدو	looked
enjoy	يستمتع	enjoyed

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past
fly	يطير	flew
swim	يسبح	swam
feed	يطعم	fed
hide	يختبئ	hid
do	يفعل	did

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

at night	ليلًا	have got to	يضطر إلى
swim in a group	يسبح في مجموعة	have a day out	يقضي يومًا بالخارج
stay in	يمكث في	in a special place	في مكان خاص
look so cool	يبدو رائعًا جدًا	do a project	يقوم بمشروع
in the dark	في الظلام	at school	في المدرسة

Help your child identify these words.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Read and learn. اقرأ وتعلم.

A snail lives in the garden. It has a shell. It doesn't have legs or arms.

الحلزون يعيش في الحديقة. له صَدَفَه وليس له أرجل أو أذرع.



A kangaroo lives in Australia. It Jumps on two legs.

الكنغر يعيش في استراليا ويقفز على ساقين.



A bat flies at night. It sleeps upside down on trees.

الخفاش يطير ليلًا وينام مقلوبًا على الأشجار.

A penguin lives on ice and snow. It's black and white. It can swim, but it can't fly.

البطريق يعيش على الثلج والجليد. إنه أبيض وأسود . يستطيع السباحة، لكنه لا يستطيع الطيران.



A parrot is a bird. It is very beautiful and colorful. It lives in the rainforest.

الببغاء طائر. إنه جميل وملوّن. يعيش في الغابة المطيرة.



A lion lives in Africa. It's a very big cat. It's very strong.

الأسد يعيش في أفريقيا. إنه قط ضخم (كبير). إنه قوي جدًا.

A dolphin is very friendly. It swims in a group with its family in the ocean.

الدولفين ودود جدًا. يسبح في مجموعة مع أسرته في المحيط.



A panda lives in China. It eats bamboo. It's big, and black and white.

تعيش الباندا في الصين. تأكل نبات الخيزران. إنه كبير ولونه أسود وأبيض.

Help your child read about animals.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ عن الحيوانات.

Listen and read.

استمع واقرأ.

Ramez : Hi! I had a wonderful day out yesterday with my family.

مرحبًا! لقد قضيت يومًا رائعًا في الخارج مع عائلتي بالأمس.

Ayman : Where did you go?

أين ذهبت؟

Ramez : I went to the new wildlife park - it was awesome!

ذهبت إلى متنزه الحياة البرية الجديد- كان رائعًا!

Ayman : What did you see? Could you go near the lions?

ماذا رأيت؟ هل استطعت الاقتراب من الأسود؟

Ramez : No, we stayed in the car. But we could see them through the trees.The kangaroos were interesting, too. When they are little, they can sit inside their mom's pouch - it's so sweet!

لا، بقينا في السيارة. لكن استطعنا رؤيتهم من خلال الأشجار. كانت حيوانات الكنغر شيقة أيضًا. عندما يكونون صغارًا، يمكنهم الجلوس داخل جيب أمهاتهم - إنه جميل جدًا.

Ayman : What birds did you see?

ما الطيور التي رأيتها؟

Ramez : Lots, but my favorites were the parrots. They were so beautiful and they could talk! We said some words for them to repeat!

الكثير، ولكن المفضلة لدي كانت الببغاوات. كانت جميلة جدًا ويمكنهم التحدث! قلنا لهم بعض الكلمات لكي يرددوها!

Ayman : What about animals that like the cold? Did you see any?

وماذا عن الحيوانات التي تحب البرد؟ هل رأيت أيًا منها؟

Ramez : Yes, penguins! They were in a special place inside. It was cold, like a fridge. We fed them some fish! I love penguins - they can swim so well and they look so cool!

نعم، طيور البطريق! كانوا في مكان مخصوص بالداخل. كان باردًا مثل الثلاجة. أطعمناهم بعض الأسماك! أنا أحب طيور البطريق - يمكنهم السباحة جيدًا جدًا وشكلهم رائع جدًا.

Ayman : Wow! Was there anything you wanted to see but couldn't?

واو! هل كان هناك أي شيء أردت رؤيته ولكنك لم تستطع؟

Ramez : The bats. I'm doing a project on bats at school, so I really wanted to see them! But they were all hiding and I couldn't see them in the dark!

الخفافيش. أقوم بمشروع عن الخفافيش في المدرسة، لذلك أردت حقًا أن أراهم! لكنهم جميعًا مختبئون ولم أتمكن من رؤيتهم في الظلام.

Ayman : Oh well, it sounds amazing! I've got to feed my rabbit now that's the most wildlife I'll see today!

حسنًا، يبدو الأمر رائعًا! يجب أن أطعم أرنبي الآن - هذا هو أكثر الحيوانات البرية التي سأراها اليوم!

Help your child listen and read the dialog.

ساعد طفلك أن يستمع إلى الحوار ويقرأه.

Activities

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False.

استمع واكتب (T) صح أو (F) خطأ.

1. Omar went to the zoo with his friends. ( )
2. They saw many animals. ( )
3. Omar saw the parrots. ( )
4. Omar saw the bats. ( )

2 Listen and complete.

استمع وأكمل.

1. Omar went to the ....
2. The park was .... !
3. Omar saw lions and ....
4. Omar saw parrots and ....

3 Read and match.

اقرأ وصِل.

1. A kangroo lives	a) the wildlife park.
2. Dolphins are	b) in Australia.
3. Lions are	c) friendly animals.
4. I went to	d) very strong.

1-( ) 2-( ) 3-( ) 4-( )

4 Read and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

اقرأ واختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. A .... lives in Australia. It jumps on two legs.
   a) bat b) lion c) panda d) kangaroo
2. A .... is a very big cat. It's very strong.
   a) parrot b) panda c) lion d) dolphin

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

3. A .... is a bird. It's very beautiful and colorful.
   a) dolphin b) parrot c) panda d) lion
4. A panda eats ....
   a) insects b) paper c) bamboo d) snakes
5. A .... can't fly.
   a) parrot b) penguin c) bat d) bird
6. I've got to .... my rabbit.
   a) feed b) eat c) run d) play
7. When kangaroos are little, they can sit inside their mom's .....
   a) coach b) couch c) pouch d) bed
8. .... like to swim in a group with their family in the ocean.
   a) Lions b) Bats c) Pandas d) Dolphins

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوّن جملًا صحيحة.

1. colorful - and - Parrots - birds - are - beautiful - .
   ....
2. did - go - Where - yesterday - you - ?
   ....
3. went - to - Ramez - park - a wildlife - .
   ....
4. did - What - see - you - there - ?
   ....

6 Punctuate the following.

ضع علامات الترقيم على ما يلي.

⇨ did Hamza see any animals ....

7 Write a paragraph of about (40) words.

اكتب فقرة من (40) كلمة.

A visit to a wildlife park

Guiding words:
1- Where did you go?
2- Who did you go with?
3- How did you go?
4- What did you see?
5- How did you find it?

Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Lesson (2 / A)

WHAT COULD YOU DO?

Can - Can't

Usage: الاستخدام:

We use "can" to talk about something we are able to do in the present.
نستخدم "can" للتعبير عن شئ نستطيع فعله في المضارع.

Form: التكوين:

Subject (الفاعل) + can + inf. (المصدر)

e.g. Birds can fly.

Negative: النفي:

Subject (الفاعل) + can't + inf. (المصدر)

e.g. Penguins can't fly.

Yes / No question السؤال بـ "هل":

Can + subject (الفاعل) + inf. (المصدر) ...?

e.g. - Can a parrot fly? - Yes, it can.

☑ Write can or can't :

1. Bats .... fly very fast.
2. Snails .... move quickly.
3. Parrots .... fly.
4. Pandas .... drive a car.

Help your child use "can" to express ability in the present.
ساعد طفلك أن يستخدم (can) للتعبير عن القدرة في المضارع.

Could - Couldn't

Usage: الاستخدام:

We use "Could" to talk about something we were able to do in the past. نستخدم "Could" للتعبير عن شئ كنا نستطيع فعله في الماضي.

Form: التكوين:

Subject (الفاعل) + could + inf.(المصدر)

e.g. I could speak French. e.g. I could ride a bike.

Negative: النفي:

Subject (الفاعل) + couldn't + inf.(المصدر)

e.g. I couldn't take the metro so I had to walk.
e.g. They couldn't fly their kites.

Yes / No question السؤال بـ "هل":

Could + subject (الفاعل) + inf.(المصدر) ...?

e.g. - Could you write when you were five? - Yes, I could.

Write could or couldn't :

1. When I was two, I .... use a computer.
2. I .... read when I was one.
3. My sister .... play chess when she was five, but she .... when she was eight.
4. My cousin .... run when he was a baby.
5. I .... swim when I was a baby, and everyone was amazed.
6. .... you speak English when you were five?

1 Read and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Birds .... fly.
   a) can b) can't c) couldn't d) isn't
2. Bats .... fly very fast.
   a) couldn't b) can't c) can d) isn't
3. Penguins .... fly.
   a) can b) could c) can't d) isn't
4. When I was two, I .... use a computer.
   a) can b) can't c) couldn't d) isn't
5. I .... read when I was one.
   a) can b) can't c) could d) couldn't
6. .... you speak English when you were five?
   a) Can b) Could c) Is d) Has
7. I .... swim when I was a baby and everyone was amazed.
   a) can b) could c) can't d) isn't
8. I couldn't say anything in German last year, but now I ....
   a) can b) can't c) could d) couldn't
9. Last year, he .... run very quickly, but now he can.
   a) can't b) could c) can d) couldn't
10. Sorry, I .... help you with your homework. I'm busy.
    a) can b) can't c) could d) couldn't

2 Complete the sentences using can / can't , could or couldn't.

1. Amr .... see the board, so he moved to the front.
2. Kangaroos .... jump very high.
3. Ostriches .... run very fast, but they .... fly.
4. I had a sore throat, so I .... talk.



THE TRAVELERS AND THE TREE



nuts
مكسرات



exhausted
متعب جدًا



trunk of a tree
جذع شجرة



branch of a tree
غصن شجرة

Extra Vocabulary كلمات إضافية

famous	مشهور	useless	عديم النفع	shelter	مأوى
ungrateful	جاحد / ناكر للجميل	rest	راحة	comfortable	مريح
travelers	مسافرون	wind	رياح	traders	تجار
lake	بحيرة	shade	ظل	value	قيمة
breeze	نسيم	moral	أخلاقي / مغزى	humans	البشر

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past
stop	يوقف / يتوقف	stopped
rest	يستريح	rested
save	ينقذ	saved

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past
fall	يسقط / يقع	fell
wake up	يستيقظ	woke up
keep	يحفظ	kept



Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

live for ...	يعيش لمدة	give shelter	يعطي مأوى
a meeting point	نقطة التقاء	rest under	يستريح تحت
wake up	يستيقظ	save life	ينقذ حياة
look around	ينظر حول	important for	هام لـ

Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Listen and read.
استمع واقرأ.

Once there was a very big old tree in a hot, dry land. It had lived for many years. Its trunk was very wide and it had many green branches. It was famous because it was the only tree where it lived, and it gave shelter and rest to hundreds of travelers as they moved across the country. It was near four towns and many villages in its area and was a meeting point for traders.

ذات مرة كان هناك شجرة كبيرة قديمة جدًا في أرض حارة وجافة. لقد عاشت لسنوات عديدة. كان جذعها عريضًا جدًا ولها العديد من الأغصان الخضراء. كانت مشهورة لأنها كانت الشجرة الوحيدة التي تعيش في ذلك المكان، وقد وفرت المأوى والراحة لمئات المسافرين أثناء تنقلهم في جميع أنحاء البلاد. كانت قريبة من أربع مدن والعديد من القرى في منطقتها وكانت نقطة التقاء التجار.

One day two travelers, who were new to the area, were walking across the field and saw the tree. It was a very hot, dry day and one of them said, "Let's stop under that tree, where there's some shade." "That's a very good idea," said his friend. They rested under the tree and drank some water. They then enjoyed the shade and the cool breeze. As they were exhausted, they soon fell asleep.

وفي يومًا ما، كان مسافران جديدان في المنطقة يسيران عبر الحقل ورأيا الشجرة. كان يومًا حارًا وجافًا جدًا وقال أحدهما، "دعنا نتوقف تحت تلك الشجرة، حيث يوجد بعض الظل". قال: له صديقه: "هذه فكرة جيدة". استراحا تحت الشجرة وشربا بعض الماء. ثم استمتعا بالظل والنسيم البارد. لأنهما كانا مرهقين، سرعان ما ناما.

When they woke up, one of the travelers felt hungry. Neither of them had any food in their bags so they looked up at the branches of the tree. "This tree is useless," one of them said. "It has no food for us - there are no nuts or fruit on its branches." "But it has shade and it's keeping us cool," said the other.

وعندما استيقظا، شعر أحد المسافرين بالجوع. لم يكن لدى أي منهما أي طعام في حقائبهما لذلك نظرا لأعلى إلى أغصان الشجرة. قال أحدهما : "هذه الشجرة عديمة النفع. ليس بها طعام لنا - لا توجد مكسرات أو فاكهة على أغصانها." قال الآخر : "لكن لها ظل وهو يحافظ على برودة أجسامنا."

But the tree heard the first traveler's words and it was angry. "How can you be so ungrateful?" It said, "You came to me feeling hot and tired. I gave you a cool, comfortable place to sleep and I probably saved your life. Look, there is no other cool place to sleep near here." The travelers looked around them and saw the tree was correct and felt very sorry.

لكن الشجرة سمعت كلام المسافر الأول وكانت غاضبة. وقالت : "كيف يمكن أن تكون جاحدًا جدًا؟ لقد أتيت إلى وأنت تشعر بالحر والتعب. أعطيتك مكانًا باردًا ومريحًا للنوم وربما أنقذت حياتك. انظر لا يوجد مكان بارد آخر للنوم بالقرب من هنا." نظرا المسافران حولهما ورأيا أن الشجرة كانت على صواب وشعرا بالأسف الشديد.

Help your child listen and read the text.
ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ النص.

Activities

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False. استمع واكتب (T) صح أو (F) خطأ.

1. The trunk had many green branches.
2. The tree was very small in a cold land.
3. The tree gave shelter and rest to hundreds of travelers.
4. The tree was near three towns.

2 Read and match. اقرأ وصل.

1. He rested under a tree
2. The travelers were walking
3. I was grateful to him as
4. He had no food so

a) he felt hungry.
b) he saved my life.
c) and drank some water.
d) across the field.

1-( ) 2-( ) 3-( ) 4-( )

3 Read and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d. اقرأ واختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. A breeze is a little ....
   a) wind b) lake c) sea d) river
2. When something is useless, we .... use it.
   a) can b) can't c) may d) could
3. When someone is .... He thanks others for doing something good.
   a) grateful b) ungrateful c) great d) sad
4. When something is comfortable. It's .... to sit on or wear.
   a) nice b) not nice c) not easy d) not simple
5. A meeting point is somewhere where people ....
   a) cook b) meet c) live d) draw

Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

4 Read the following text and answer the questions. اقرأ النص التالي وأجب عن الأسئلة.

One day two travelers, who were new to the area, were walking across the field and saw the tree. It was a very hot, dry day and one of them said, "Let's stop under that tree, where there's some shade." "That's a very good idea," said his friend. They rested under the tree and drank some water. They then enjoyed the shade and the cool breeze. As they were exhausted, they soon fell asleep.

When they woke up, one of the travelers felt hungry. Neither of them had any food in their bags so they looked up at the branches of the tree. "This tree is useless," one of them said. "It has no food for us - there are no nuts or fruit on its branches." "But it has shade and it's keeping us cool," said the other.

A) Choose the correct answer from a,b, c or d.

1. The underlined word exhausted means very ....
   a) happy b) tired c) glad d) similar
2. There are no nuts or fruit on the tree ....
   a) roots b) branches c) trunk d) bark

B) Answer the following questions.

3. Summarize the second paragraph. ....
4. Was the tree useless? ....

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences. أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوّن جملًا صحيحة.

1. you - can't - I - help - your - with - homework - .
2. when - speak - Could - were - you - six - you - months old - ?
3. could - do - What - you - yesterday - ?

6 Write a paragraph of about (40) words. اكتب فقرة من (40) كلمة.

Trees

Guiding words:
(plant - useful - fruits - shade - shelter)

Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.



CLIL : SCIENCE



drinking
الشرب


shower
الاستحمام


washing
غسيل الملابس


swimming
السباحة


watering plants
سقي النباتات


washing a car
غسيل السيارة


river
نهر


lake
بحيرة


snow
جليد


ice
ثلج


ocean
محيط


cloud
سحابة


rain
مطر

Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Extra Vocabulary كلمات إضافية

rainwater مياه المطر	process عملية	water vapor بخار ماء
ice ثلج	snow جليد	

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
change يتغير	changed	warm يدفئ	warmed
call ينادي / يَدعي	called	start يبدأ	started

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
become يصبح	became	fall يسقط	fell
rise يرتفع	rose	come يأتي	came
smell يشم	smelt		

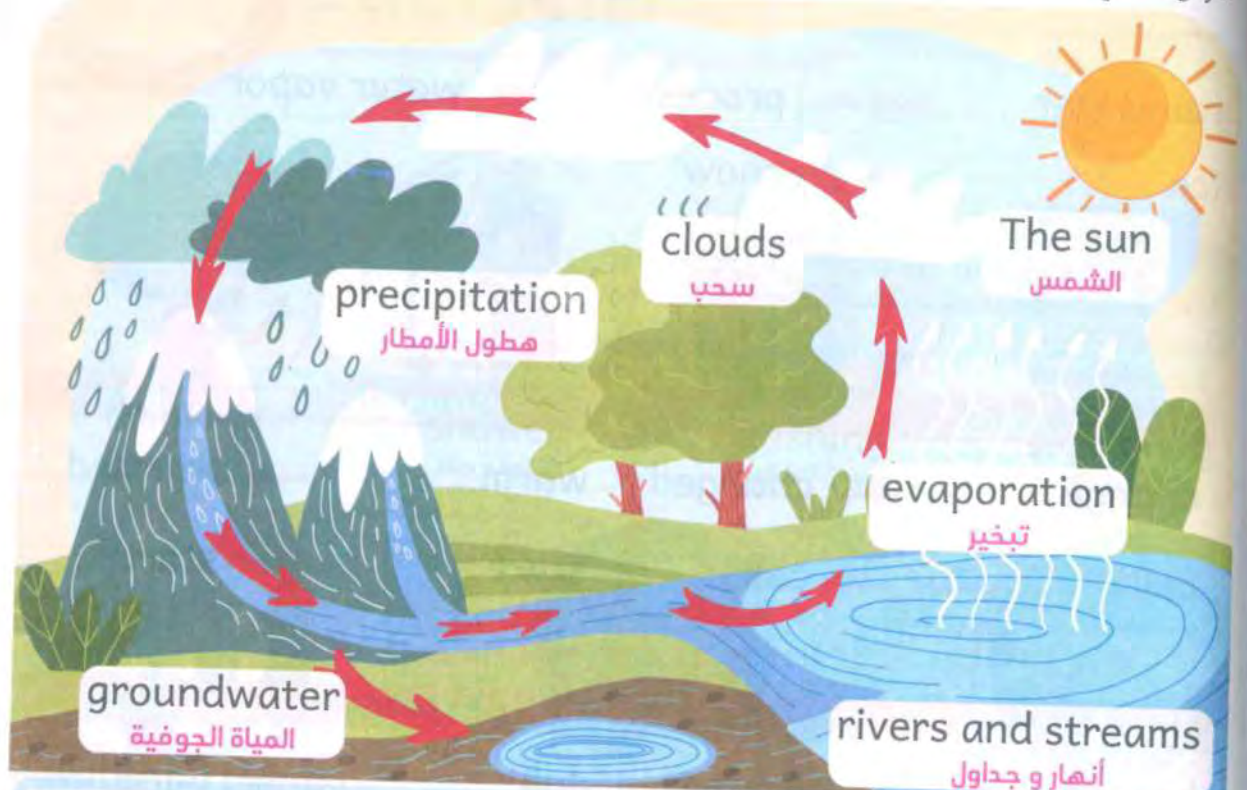
Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

come from يأتي من	fall from يسقط من
go straight into يذهب مباشرة إلى	a lot of كثير من
is called يُدعى / يُسمّى	stay on يبقى على
high up عاليًا	change into يتحول إلى
get heavier يصبح أثقل	

Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Read and listen.

اقرأ واستمع.



Where does our water come from?

Rain falls from clouds in the sky. Some rainwater goes straight into the ground. But a lot of it goes into streams, rivers, lakes, and then the ocean. This process is called precipitation.
Some of the rainwater changes - the sun warms it and it becomes water vapor. This process is called evaporation'. We cannot see or smell the water vapor and it doesn't stay on the ground. It rises in the air and, as it gets cooler high up in the sky, it changes back into water and forms clouds. As the clouds become bigger, the water in them gets heavier. When the water in the clouds gets heavier, it falls to the ground, and the cycle starts again.

من أين يأتي الماء؟
المطر يتساقط من السحب في السماء. تذهب بعض مياه الأمطار مباشرة إلى الأرض، لكن الكثير منها يذهب إلى الجداول والأنهار والبحيرات ثم المحيط. هذه العملية تسمى هطول الأمطار.
تتغير بعض مياه الأمطار - فالشمس تدفئها وتتحول إلى بخار ماء. هذه العملية تسمى " التبخر". لا يمكننا رؤية أو شم بخار الماء ولا يبقى على الأرض إنه يرتفع في الهواء، وعندما يصبح أكثر برودة عاليًا في السماء، يتحول مرة أخرى إلى ماء ويشكل سحب. عندما تكبر الغيوم، يزداد وزن الماء بداخلهم.
عندما يزداد وزن الماء في السحب، يسقط على الأرض، وتبدأ الدورة من جديد.

Help your child listen and read the text.
ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ النص.

Activities

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False.
استمع واكتب (T) صح أو (F) خطأ.

1. Rain falls from clouds in the sky. ( )
2. Some rainwater doesn't go straight into the ground. ( )
3. A lot of rain goes into streams, rivers, lakes and oceans. ( )
4. This process is called evaporation. ( )

2 Read and match.
اقرأ وصل.

1 Where does water	a) straight into ground.
2 Rain falls from	b) come from?
3 Some of the rainwater	c) the clouds in the sky.
4 Some rainwater goes	d) becomes water vapor.

1-( ) 2-( ) 3-( ) 4-( )

3 Read and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.
اقرأ واختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. Rain falls from .... in the sky.
   a) houses b) clouds c) vapor d) steam
2. The sun warms rainwater and it becomes water ....
   a) process b) vapor c) evaporation d) cloud
3. We can't see or .... water vapor.
   a) hear b) smell c) play d) talk

4 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.
أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوّن جملًا صحيحة.

1. falls - clouds - Rain - in - from - sky - the - .
....
2. does - water - Where - from - come - ?
....
3. clouds - water - The - from - falls - .
....

Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.



Lesson (3 / B) CLIL : SOCIAL STUDIES

Listen and say. استمع وقل.




pharaoh فرعون



nobles النبلاء



soldier جندي



traders التجار



Ancient Egyptian society
المجتمع المصري القديم



scribe كاتب



artisan حِرَفي



farmers المزارعون - الفلاحون

Extra Vocabulary كلمات إضافية

different	مختلف	the army	الجيش	important	هام / مهم
papyrus	ورق البردي	role	دور / وظيفة	records	سجلات
society	مجتمع	jewelry	مجوهرات	goods	بضائع
uniform	زي موحد	materials	مواد خام	chariots	عربات

Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Definitions التعريفات

pharaoh	He ruled the country.	فرعون
soldiers	They kept Ancient Egyptians safe.	جنود
scribes	They wrote everything for the people.	الكتبة
traders	They bought and sold all the goods.	التجار
farmers	They grew the food for everyone.	الفلاحون
artisan	Someone who makes things with their hands.	حِرَفي

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past
need	يحتاج	needed
work	يعمل	worked
organize	ينظم	organized
guard	يحرس	guarded
train	يتدرب	trained
produce	ينتج	produced
rule	يحكم	ruled

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past
know	يعرف	knew
grow	ينمو / يكبر / يزرع	grew
keep	يحفظ	kept
sell	يبيع	sold
write	يكتب	wrote
buy	يشتري	bought

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

play important roles	يلعب أدوار هامة	in charge	مسئول
work with	يعمل مع	look after	يعتني بـ
collect taxes	يجمع ضرائب	organize soldiers	ينظم الجنود
keep ... safe	يحفظ ... بأمان	guard the kingdom	يحرس المملكة
train for ...	يتدرب لمدة	write on papyrus	يكتب على ورق البردي
take ... from	يأخذ ... من	pick out	ينتقي / يختار

Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.



Read and listen.

اقرأ واستمع.

Lots of different people played important roles in Ancient Egyptian society. The person in charge was the pharaoh. The pharaoh needed lots of people to help him. He worked closely with nobles, and they looked after different things. The nobles collected taxes and organized soldiers.

لعب الكثير من الأشخاص المختلفين أدوارًا مهمة في المجتمع المصري القديم. كان الشخص المسئول هو الفرعون. وكان الفرعون يحتاج إلى الكثير من الأشخاص ليساعدوه. لقد عمل عن كثب مع النبلاء، وكانوا يعتنون بأشياء مختلفة. كان النبلاء يجمعون الضرائب وينظمون الجنود.

Soldiers were busy keeping Egypt safe. As Egypt was such an important and very rich country, the soldiers guarded the kingdom. The army was strong, and the soldiers were good at their jobs.

كان الجنود مشغولين بالحفاظ على أمن مصر. ولأن مصر كانت دولة مهمة وغنية جدًا، كان الجنود يحرسون المملكة. كان الجيش قويًا وكان الجنود جيدين في وظائفهم.

Scribes were very important because they were usually the only people who could read and write. They trained for about 12 years before they wrote on papyrus. They wrote many different things like letters, records, and important papers. Without the scribes, we would know almost nothing about Ancient Egypt today.

كان الكتبة مهمين للغاية لأنهم كانوا عادة الوحيدين الذين يستطيعون القراءة والكتابة. لقد تدربوا لمدة حوالي ١٢ عامًا قبل أن يكتبوا على ورق البردي. لقد كتبوا أشياء مختلفة مثل الرسائل والسجلات والأوراق المهمة. وبدون الكتبة، لم نكن لنعرف شيئًا عن مصر القديمة اليوم.

Traders were the people who bought and sold everything in Ancient Egyptian society - food, clothes, jewelry, soldiers' uniforms, ships, and materials for building.

التجار هم الأشخاص الذين يشترون ويبيعون كل شيء في المجتمع المصري القديم، الأطعمة والملابس والمجوهرات والزي الرسمي للجنود، والسفن والمواد الخام المستخدمة في البناء.

Artisans took the materials from the traders and made them into things for people to use, like furniture, chariots, and clothes.

كان الحرفيون يأخذون المواد الخام من التجار ويصنعونها لأشياء يستخدمها الناس، مثل الأثاث والعربات والملابس.

Farmers produced the food that was eaten by the pharaoh, the nobles, the soldiers, the scribes, the traders, and the artisans.

كان المزارعون ينتجون الطعام الذي يأكله الفرعون والنبلاء والجنود والكتبة والتجار والحرفيون.

Help your child listen and read the text.

ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ النص.

Activities

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False.

استمع واكتب (T) صح أو (F) خطأ.

1. The person in charge was not the Pharaoh. ( )
2. The Pharaoh needed lots of people to help him. ( )
3. The Pharaoh didn't work closely with nobles. ( )
4. The nobles collected taxes and organized soldiers. ( )

2 Listen and complete.

استمع وأكمل.

1. .... were busy keeping Egypt safe.
2. Egypt was such an important and very .... country.
3. The soldiers .... the kingdom.
4. The .... was strong and the soldiers were good at their jobs.

3 Read and match.

اقرأ وصل.

1. Pharaoh	a. They grew the food for everyone.
2. Soldiers	b. He ruled the country.
3. Scribes	c. They wrote everything for the people.
4. Traders	d. They kept Ancient Egyptians safe.
5. Farmers	e. They bought and sold all the goods.

1-( ) 2-( ) 3-( ) 4-( ) 5-( )

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

4 Read and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

اقرأ واختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. The pharaoh worked with ....
   a) farmers b) traders c) nobles d) scribes
2. The nobles collected .... and organized soldiers.
   a) taxes b) boxes c) faxes d) books
3. The .... was the person in charge.
   a) pharaoh b) soldier c) scribe d) farmer
4. .... bought and sold all the goods.
   a) Soldiers b) Traders c) Farmers d) Scribes
5. I would like to be a .... because I like writing.
   a) scribe b) pharaoh c) trader d) farmer
6. .... were busy keeping Egypt safe.
   a) Scribes b) Farmers c) Soldiers d) Artisans

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوّن جملًا صحيحة.

1. were - busy - Soldiers - safe - Egypt - keeping - .
   ....
2. were - scribes - Why - important - very - ?
   ....
3. was - person - The - the - pharaoh - charge - in - .
   ....
4. would - like - Why - you - be - to - a scribe - ?
   ....

6 Write a paragraph of about (40) words.

اكتب فقرة من (40) كلمة.

A job you liked in Ancient Egypt

Guiding words:

1- What's the job?
2- Why do you like it?
3- What work does the person do?

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Lesson (4) THIS IS SO INTERESTING!

Listen and repeat.

استمع وردد.



teacher
معلم



reader
قارئ

climber
متسلق



footballer
لاعب كرة قدم



farmer
مزارع



traveler
مسافر

Language Focus (1)

- **We add the suffix "er" to the end of words to make a noun.**

نضيف اللاحقة "er" إلى نهاية بعض الكلمات لتكون أسم.

teach → teacher	write → writer	farm → farmer

Complete the sentences with words from the box.

(reader - traveler - footballer)

1. My grandfather was a great .... He traveled to many great places around the world.
2. A famous Egyptian .... in England is Mohamed Elneny - he plays for Arsenal.
3. My cousin is a very good .... He reads about 20 books a year.

Help your child learn and use the suffix "er".

ساعد طفلك أن يتعلم ويستخدم اللاحقة "er".

Language Focus (2)

We add (ed or ing) to a verb to make an adjective. If the verb ends in - e, we take off the -e and add (ed or -ing).

نضيف للفعل "ed" أو "ing" لنكون صفة. إذا انتهى الفعل بحرف "e" نحذف حرف الـ "e" ونضيف "ed" أو "ing".

e.g. - English was interesting! - He is so excited.
- The film is exciting. - I'm very interested in history.

Note:

(ed) adjectives describe how you feel.

الصفات المنتهية بـ "ed" تصف كيف تشعر (وصف الشخص أو من وقع عليه الحدث).

(ing) adjectives describe what the thing was like.

الصفات المنتهية بـ "ing" تصف كيف كان الشيء (وصف الشيء أو من يفعل الحدث).

Add -ed and -ing to the verbs to make adjectives.

1. annoy ....
2. amaze ....
3. interest ....

Read and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

اقرأ واختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. I'm .... in history.
   a) interesting b) exciting c) interested d) boring
2. History is .... I like it.
   a) interested b) interesting c) boring d) excited
3. The film was so ....
   a) bored b) boring c) excited d) interested
4. He was .... by his cruel words.
   a) annoy b) annoying c) annoyed d) boring
5. He worked all day. He was ....
   a) tired b) excited c) bored d) tiring

Help your child learn about "ed" and "ing" adjectives.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعلم عن الصفات المنتهية بـ "ed" و "ing".

PRONUNCIATION

Listen and repeat.

استمع وردد.



Language Focus

/v/ and /w/ are both voiced sounds. This means that if you place your hand on your throat. You can feel the vibration when you say them.

الصوتان /v/ و /w/ كلاهما أصوات مجهورة. وهذا يعني أنه إذا وضعت يدك على حلقك، يمكنك أن تشعر بالاهتزاز عندما تقولها.

- To pronounce /v/, press your top teeth against your bottom lip.

لنطق الصوت /v/ ، اضغط أسنانك العليا على شفتك السفلى.

vet vase violin volcano

- To pronounce /w/, make a tight circle with your lips.

لنطق الصوت /w/ ، اصنع دائرة ضيقة بشفتيك.

winter wet whale water

Help your child learn how to say /w/ and /v/ sounds.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعلم كيف يقول الأصوات /w/ و /v/.

Activities

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False. استمع واكتب (T) صح أو (F) خطأ.

1. Mohamed El Neny is a basketball player.
2. Mohamed El Neny is a footballer in England.
3. He plays for Arsenal.
4. Mohamed El Neny is Italian.

2 Read and match. اقرأ وصل.

1. My grandfather was — a) is Mrs Salwa.
2. Mohamed El Neny is — b) a great traveler.
3. The film was boring — c) a famous Egyptian footballer.
4. My favorite teacher — d) so I was bored.

1-( ) 2-( ) 3-( ) 4-( )

3 Read and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d. اقرأ واختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. My uncle is a professional محترف .... He goes up very high mountains.
   a) teacher b) traveler c) reader d) climber
2. That long walk was very ....
   a) tired b) bored c) tiring d) excited
3. Mr Mahmoud is an excellent .... He plants the best tomatoes in town.
   a) teacher b) farmer c) reader d) climber
4. The film was .... I enjoyed it.
   a) interesting b) interested c) bored d) excited
5. The match was exciting so Ali was ....
   a) interesting b) boring c) excited d) amazing

4 Read the following text and answer the questions. اقرأ النص التالي وأجب عن الأسئلة.

Last Wednesday I decided to travel west in my boat wearing my vest. I was looking for a volcano but I had some problems. I met some whales and they turned over my boat. I had to sit on my violin to stay afloat! I ate watermelon to stay healthy and I came to shore. I didn't find the volcano , but I met some vets and they took me home to my village!

A) Choose the correct answer from a,b, c or d.

1. The underlined word "vets" means a doctor for ....
   a) women b) men c) children d) animals
2. The writer was looking for a ....
   a) tornado b) volcano c) cave d) tent

B) Answer the following questions.

3. What animals did the writer meet? ....
4. What did the writer have to do? ....

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences. أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوّن جملًا صحيحة.

1. kind - very - Miss Salwa - and - is - friendly - classroom - in - the - .
2. movie - was - That - boring - so - .
3. looking - were - What - for - you - ?
4. the - match - Was - boring - exciting - or - ?

6 Punctuate the following. ضع علامات الترقيم على ما يلي.

⇨ Mohamed El Neny plays for arsenal

⇨ can you say vase quickly



- WRITING
- PROJECT

Vocabulary المفردات

dugong	حيوان الأطوم	sea bed	قاع البحر
nickname	اسم مستعار (كنية)	unusual	غير عادي
sea cow	بقرة البحر	informal language	لغة غير رسمية
See you soon!	أراك قريبًا	How are things?	كيف الأحوال؟
just a quick note	مجرد ملاحظة سريعة	All the best	أتمنى لك كل خير

Tip!

Writing an email كتابة رسالة بريد إلكتروني

1- Begin your email with Dear or Hi and the person's name.
ابدأ بريدك الإلكتروني بـ Dear أو Hi واسم الشخص.

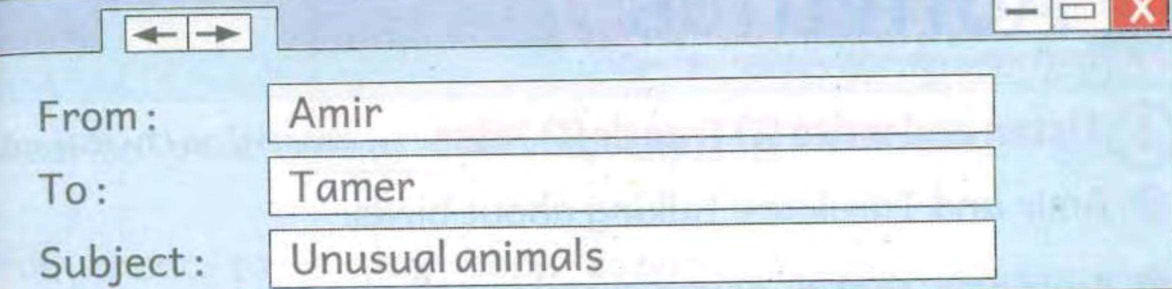
2- Say why you are writing. Use phrases like Just a quick note and Thanks for writing to me.
قل لماذا تكتب. استخدم عبارات مثل (مجرد ملاحظة سريعة، وشكرًا على مراسلتي).

3- Give one idea in a paragraph and expand on it - look how Amir mentions the dugong, then describes it.
أعط فكرة واحدة في الفقرة وتوسع فيها. انظر كيف يذكر أمير حيوان الأطوم ثم يصفه.

4- When writing to a friend, you can use informal language, e.g. words like awesome and cool, contractions like I'm, and phrases like How's life? and How are things?
عند الكتابة إلى صديق، يمكنك استخدام لغة غير رسمية. على سبيل المثال كلمات مثل "رائع وجميل"، واختصارات مثل " I'm"، وعبارات مثل "كيف هي الدنيا؟ وكيف تسير الأمور؟

5- End your email with phrases like Write soon, Hope to hear from you soon, See you soon, All the best, or Bye for now, and then your name.
قم بإنهاء رسالة البريد الإلكتروني بعبارات مثل "اكتب قريبًا، أتمنى أن أسمع منك قريبًا، أراك قريبًا، أتمنى لك التوفيق، أو إلى اللقاء الآن". ثم اكتب اسمك.

Help your child write an email.
ساعد طفلك أن يكتب رسالة بريد إلكتروني.



From:	Amir
To:	Tamer
Subject:	Unusual animals



Dear Tamer,

Thanks for your email. How are things? It was really interesting to hear about the sports you like. I love basketball, and I play on a team once a week.

عزيزي تامر،
شكرًا على رسالة البريد الإلكتروني. كيف الأحوال؟ كان من الممتع حقًا أن أسمع عن الرياضات التي تحبها. أنا أحب كرة السلة، وألعب في فريق مرة واحدة في الأسبوع.

This week we're talking a lot about unusual animals at school. We looked at animals from around the world and some from Egypt. My favorite unusual animal from Egypt is the dugong - can you see the photo? I think it's got a lovely friendly face and it's very cute! Its nickname is the sea cow and it spends many hours eating grass from the sea bed every day.

نتحدث هذا الأسبوع كثيرًا عن الحيوانات غير العادية في المدرسة. نظرنا إلى حيوانات من جميع أنحاء العالم وبعضها من مصر. الحيوان غير المعتاد المفضل لدي من مصر هو حيوان الأطوم، هل يمكنك رؤية الصورة؟ أعتقد أنه يتمتع بوجه حيوان ودود جميل وهو لطيف جدًا! لقبه هو بقرة البحر ويقضي ساعات طويلة في أكل العشب من قاع البحر كل يوم.

What about you? What's your favorite unusual animal? Write back and let me know.

Hope to hear from you soon!

Amir

وماذا عنك؟ ما هو الحيوان غير العادي المفضل لديك؟ اكتب وأعلمني.
أتمنى أن أسمع منك قريبًا.
أمير

Help your child write an email about an unusual animal.
ساعد طفلك أن يكتب رسالة بريد إلكتروني عن حيوان غير عادي.

Activities

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False. استمع واكتب (T) صح أو (F) خطأ.

1. Amir and Tarek are talking about birds. ( )
2. Amir says that dugongs are also called sea cows. ( )
3. Amir sends a photo to Tamer. ( )
4. Dugong is an animal from Egypt. ( )

2 Read and match. اقرأ وصل.

1. See you	a) best.
2. How are	b) note.
3. Just a quick	c) soon!
4. All the	d) things?

1-( ) 2-( ) 3-( ) 4-( )

3 Read and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d. اقرأ واختر الإجابة الصحيحة

1. My favorite .... from Egypt is the dugong.
   a) bird b) animal c) thing d) item
2. The dugong's .... is sea cow.
   a) surname b) name c) nickname d) full name
3. The dugong spends many hours eating grass from sea ....
   a) bag b) bed c) chair d) table
4. Begin your email with ....
   a) Deer b) Dear c) Bye d) See you
5. End your email with "Write ....".
   a) soon b) noon c) phone d) late

4 Reorder the words to make correct sentences. أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوّن جملًا صحيحة.

1. favorite - your - What's - animal - unusual - ?
   ....
2. from - hear - to - I - you - hope - soon - .
   ....
3. for - your - Thanks - email - .
   ....
4. your - email - Begin - "Dear" - with - .
   ....

5 Write an email of (40) words to your friend Mazen telling him about your favorite zoo animal, your name is Hamza. اكتب بريدًا إلكترونيًا.

1- Write about your favorite animal.
2- What the animal looks like.
3- Where it lives and what it eats.
4- Ask your friend about his opinion.

From : ....
To : ....
Subject : ....

....

6 Punctuate the following. ضع علامات الترقيم على ما يلي.

⇨ Mazen sent an email to hanin
....
⇨ what's your favorite animal
....

Review on Unit (9)

Animals and birds

kangaroo كنغر	bat خفاش	penguin طائر البطريق
panda باندا	lion أسد	dolphin دولفين
snail حلزون	parrot ببغاء	

Trees

trunk جذع / ساق	save ينقذ	branch فرع
nuts مكسرات	shelter مأوى	breeze نسيم
rest راحة	exhausted متعب	useless عديم الفائدة
ungrateful جاحد / ناكر الجميل	comfortable مريح	

Ancient Egypt

Pharaohs فراعنة	scribes الكتبة	soldiers الجنود
traders التجار	farmers المزارعون	artisans الحرفيين
nobles النبلاء	taxes الضرائب	

Phonics

Voiced sounds			
vet	violin	west	wet
volcano	vest	whale	watermelon

Language

- She **could** speak English.
- I **can play** tennis.
- I'm very **interested** in history.
- History is so **interesting**.

Help your child revise unit (9).

ساعد طفلك أن يراجع الوحدة التاسعة.



Writing Corner

Write a paragraph of about (40) words. اكتب فقرة من (40) كلمة

"Your favorite animal"

My favorite animal is the lion. It's a very strong animal. It lives in the wild. It eats meat. It is the strongest animal. It can hunt its prey easily and quickly. It is wild and fierce. It's kept in iron cages so as not to harm anyone. It's the king of the forest. The lion has strong claws and sharp teeth which help it hunt its prey and eat it.

"A visit to the wildlife park"

Yesterday Ramez went to a wildlife park with his family. He enjoyed it very much. They saw lots of different animals like lions, kangaroos, and penguins. He saw his favorite birds, the parrots. He was a bit sad because he didn't see the bats and he's doing a project on them at school.

"Trees"

Trees are the best gift of nature for us. They make the environment beautiful and clean. Water and sunlight are very important to help trees grow. Human beings get food from trees. They give us wood and shade. Houses,chairs and toys are made from wood that we receive from trees. They produce oxygen. They give us fruits and flowers .

Help your child write paragraphs.

ساعد طفلك أن يكتب فقرات.

Dictation on Unit (9)

Lesson (1)

Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning
	كنغر		طائر البطريق
	دب الباندا		دولفين
	خفاش		حلزون
	غابة مطيرة		كيس / جراب الكنغر

Lesson (2)

Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning
	جذع		مكسرات
	فروع		عديم الفائدة
	مأوى		جاحد / ناكر الجميل
	راحة		مريح
	متعَب		نسيم

Lesson (3)

Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning
	هطول الأمطار		يحرس
	التبخير		سجلات
	مسئول		تجار
	النبلاء		حرفيين
	الجنود		فرعون
	عربات		كتبة

Lesson (4)

Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning
	متضايق		ماكر
	شيق		متفاجىء
	محترف		بركان

Lessons (5&6)

Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning
	لقب		محيط
	حيوان الأطوم		غابة
	طبيب بيطري		عجلة

Help your child dictate these words.
ساعد طفلك في إملاء هذه الكلمات.

Activities on Unit (9)

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False. استمع واكتب (T) صح أو (F) خطأ.

1. Scribes were not very important in Ancient Egypt. ( )
2. Scribes could read and write. ( )
3. They trained for about 12 years before they wrote on papyrus. ( )
4. Scribes didn't write letters or records. ( )

2 Listen and complete. استمع وأكمل.

1. Dolphins are ....
2. Pandas live in ....
3. Pandas eat ....
4. Pandas are ....

3 Read and match. اقرأ وصل.

1. Trees give us
2. A breeze is
3. Rain falls from
4. A pharaoh

a. ruled the county.
b. clouds in the sky.
c. a little wind.
d. shade and shelter.

1-( ) 2-( ) 3-( ) 4-( )

4 Reorder the words to make correct sentences. أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوّن جملًا صحيحة.

1. you - swim - Could - you - were - when - five ?

....

Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

2. us - give - Trees - and - shelter - shade - .

....

3. is - point - A meeting - somewhere - meet - to - .

....

4. from - does - Where - water - come - ?

....

5 Read the following text and answer the questions.

اقرأ النص التالي وأجب عن الأسئلة.

Every week. I go to the park. I always go there on Fridays. My father usually drives me there. My mother and my two sisters often go with us. We always sit under a tree to protect us from the sun. We never leave the park dirty.

A) Choose the correct answer from a,b, c or d.

1. I go to the park by ....
   a) bus b) train c) plane d) car
2. I always go to the park on ....
   a) Mondays b) Saturdays c) Fridays d) Sundays

B) Answer the following questions.

3. Who often go with you? ....
4. Where do you always sit? ....

6 Punctuate the following.

ضع علامات الترقيم على ما يلي.

⇨ Mazen likes english and Arabic

....

⇨ Where does hanin come from

....

7 Write a paragraph of about (40) words.

اكتب فقرة من (40) كلمة.

My favorite player

Guiding words:

(Mohamed El Neny - Arsenal - Egyptian - score - want - like - best)

Activities on Units (7 - 9)

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False.

استمع واكتب (T) صح أو (F) خطأ.

1. The Egyptian tortoise is one of the biggest tortoises in the world. ( )
2. The Egyptian tortoise lives in desert areas of Egypt and Italy. ( )
3. The Egyptian habitat has been destroyed. ( )
4. People take the tortoises from the wild to keep as pets. ( )

2 Listen and complete.

استمع وأكمل.

1. Dorcas gazelles live in the .... and Negev deserts.
2. Dorcas gazelles are .... They only eat leaves and plants.
3. Dorcas gazelles are nearly ....
4. People are using their habitat for .... and building.

3 Read and match.

اقرأ وصل.

1. How long did you
2. Which food is
3. Soldiers guarded
4. I cut my

a) the most popular?
b) the kingdom in Ancient Egypt.
c) live in your old apartment?
d) knee last week.

1-( ) 2-( ) 3-( ) 4-( )

4 Read the following text and answer the questions.

اقرأ النص التالي وأجب عن الأسئلة.

Lots of different people played important roles in Ancient Egyptian society. The person in charge was the pharaoh. The pharaoh needed lots of people to help him. He worked closely with nobles, and they looked after different things. The nobles collected taxes and organized soldiers.

Soldiers were busy keeping Egypt safe. As Egypt was such an important and very rich country, the soldiers guarded the kingdom. The army was strong, and the soldiers were good at their jobs.

Scribes were very important because they were usually the only people who could read and write. They trained for about 12 years before they wrote on papyrus. They wrote many different things like letters, records, and important papers. Without the scribes, we would know almost nothing about Ancient Egypt today.

A) Choose the correct answer from a,b, c or d.

1. The underlined word "in charge" means ....
   a) possible b) probable c) responsible d) usual
2. The .... collected taxes and organized soldiers.
   a) scribes b) nobles c) artisans d) farmers

B) Answer the following questions.

3. Why were scribes very important? ....
4. What were soldiers busy doing? ....

Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوّن جملًا صحيحة.

1. did - What - to - use - they - build - homes - ?
   ....
2. biggest - is - The - the - elephant - world - animal - in - the - .
   ....
3. do - do - What - you - stay - healthy - to - ?
   ....
4. like - would - I - be - to - a scribe - .
   ....

6 Punctuate the following.

ضع علامات الترقيم على ما يلي.

⇨ mazen could read and write when he was seven
....

⇨ mona didn't eat her dinner
....

7 Write a paragraph of about (40) words.

اكتب فقرة من (40) كلمة.

"My perfect room"

Guiding words:

(bedroom - share - desk - armchair - closet - posters)

....

Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.



Non-Fiction Reader



Read and listen. اقرأ واستمع.

ENDANGERED ANIMALS IN EGYPT.

الحيوانات المهددة بالإنقراض في مصر

If an animal is endangered, it means that it could become extinct. Animals can become endangered for several reasons including loss of habitat, pollution, and poaching. It's our responsibility to protect all wild animals because we share the Earth with them! Our actions shouldn't hurt wild animals or their habitats. In Egypt, around 70 species of animals are endangered. Let's look at two of them:

إذا تعرض حيوان ما لخطر، فهذا يعني أنه يمكن أن ينقرض. يمكن أن تصبح الحيوانات مهددة بالانقراض لعدة أسباب بما في ذلك فقدان المواطن والتلوث والصيد الجائر. وتقع على عاتقنا مسؤولية حماية جميع الحيوانات البرية لأننا نتشارك الأرض معهم! يجب ألا تؤذي أفعالنا الحيوانات البرية أو موطنها. ويوجد في مصر حوالي 70 نوعًا من الحيوانات المعرضة للخطر. هيا ننظر إلى اثنين منهم.

Egyptian tortoise



Facts

Population: 7,470

Can live up to: 50 years

Length: 14.4 cm

Weight: 160-350 g

Top speed: up to 8 kms per hour

Diet: plants and leaves

Help your child read about endangered animals.
ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ عن الحيوانات المهددة بالانقراض.

Dorcas gazelle



Facts

Population: 1,000-2,000

Can live up to: 15 years

Length: 90-100 cm

Weight: 15-20 kg

Top speed: up to 96 kms per hour

Diet: plants and leaves

The Egyptian tortoise is one of the smallest tortoises in the world. It lives in the desert areas of Egypt and Libya. However, the Egyptian tortoise is now endangered. This is because its habitat has been destroyed, but also because people take them from the wild to keep as pets.

Dorcas gazelles live in the Sahara and Negev deserts. They are herbivores - this means they only eat leaves and plants. Dorcas gazelles are nearly extinct for two main reasons: firstly, people hunt them for their meat and skin. Secondly, more and more people are using their habitat for farming and building.

تعتبر السلحفاة المصرية من أصغر السلاحف في العالم. وتعيش في المناطق الصحراوية في مصر وليبيا. ومع ذلك ، فإن السلحفاه المصرية مهددة بالانقراض الآن. وهذا بسبب تدمير موطنها، ولكن أيضًا لأن الناس يأخذونها من البرية للاحتفاظ بها كحيوانات أليفة.

تعيش غزلان الدوركاس في الصحراء الكبرى وصحاري النقب: وهي من الحيوانات آكلة الأعشاب. وهذا يعنى أنهم يأكلون فقط أوراق الشجر والنباتات. وتعتبر غزلان الدوركاس تقريبًا منقرضة لسببين رئيسيين : أولًا، يصطادها الناس من أجل لحومها وجلدها. وثانيًا، ويستخدم المزيد والمزيد من الناس موطنها للزراعة والبناء.

Help your child read about endangered animals.
ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ عن الحيوانات المهددة بالانقراض.



Theme (4) Being responsible

Unit 10 Let's visit Egypt

هيَّا نزور مصر

In this unit the student will ...

في هذه الوحدة الطالب سوف.......

- listen, read, research, and write about places in a town.
  يستمع ويقرأ ويبحث، ويكتب عن أماكن في مدينة.
- practice using the imperative to tell someone to do or not to do something.
  يتدرب على استخدام صيغة الأمر ليخبر شخصًا ما أن يفعل أو لا يفعل شيئًا ما.
- practice using questions and short answers. يتدرب على استخدام الأسئلة والإجابات المختصرة
- read and say words with diphthongs يقرأ ويتدرب على قول الكلمات التي بها إدغام.
- estimate with mental math. يقيم(يقدر) بالحساب الذهني
- write a paragraph about his town يكتب فقرة عن مدينته
- make a poster about his perfect town. يعمل ملصق عن مدينته المثالية.

Lesson (1) WE LOVE ALEXANDRIA

Listen and say. استمع وقل.

Places in the town
أماكن في المدينة



bank
بنك


factory
مصنع


monument
نصب تذكاري / تمثال


library
مكتبة


shopping mall
مجمع تجاري (مول)


square
ميدان


station
محطة


museum
متحف


restaurant
مطعم


market
سوق


beach
شاطئ


hotel
فندق

Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Extra Vocabulary كلمات إضافية

roof garden	حديقة بالسطح	cuisine	طبخ / مطبخ	tourists	سياح
culture	ثقافة	originally	أصلًا	mint	نعناع
traditional	تقليدي	mix	خليط / مزيج	England	انجلترا
ingredients	مكونات / مقادير	Barcelona	برشلونة	Germany	ألمانيا
supermarket	سوبر ماركت	fresh	طازج	Cairo	القاهرة
traditions	تقاليد	store	متجر		

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past
own	يمتلك	owned
chat	يدردش	chatted
serve	يقدم	served
remind	يذكر	reminded
borrow	يستعير	borrowed

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past
think	يعتقد	thought
buy	يشتري	bought
spend	يقضي	spent
think	يعتقد	thought
swim	يسبح	swam

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

on vacation	في إجازة	spend ages	يقضي فترات طويلة
reminds me of	تُذكرني بـ	walk around	يتجول حول
find out about	يكتشف (يعرف)	show... around	يأخذ ..... في جولة
all my life	طوال حياتي	by train	بالقطار
originally from	في الأصل من	move to	ينتقل إلى
at the market	في السوق	chat to	يدردش مع
go on school trip	يذهب في رحلة مدرسية	work in	يعمل في
mix of	خليط من	buy from	يشتري من

Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Listen and read. استمع واقرأ.

Who is from Alexandria?

Why we love Alexandria!

Alexandria is a really exciting place to visit.
There's a lot to see and do here!
It's a big city with lots of amazing restaurants, stores, markets, and museums. There's even a beach!
We asked some people who live there and tourists what they think ...

لماذا نحب الإسكندرية!
الإسكندرية مكان مثير جدًا للزيارة. هناك الكثير لرؤيته والقيام به هنا! إنها مدينة كبيرة وبها الكثير من المطاعم والمتاجر والأسواق والمتاحف الرائعة. وهناك شاطئ!
سألنا بعض الأشخاص الذين يعيشون هناك والسياح عن رأيهم......

Jens: I'm visiting Alexandria from Germany. I think it's really cool here. I think there are some good museums, but I haven't been to any yet. I love just sitting in the roof garden of my hotel, drinking sweet Egyptian mint tea and chatting to other people. It's very relaxing.

جنز: أنا أزور الإسكندرية من ألمانيا. أعتقد أن المكان هنا رائع جدًا.
أعتقد أن هناك بعض المتاحف الجيدة، لكنني لم أزرها بعد. أحب مجرد الجلوس في حديقة سطح فندقي، وشرب شاي بالنعناع المصري الحلو والدردشة مع الآخرين. إنه أمر مريح للغاية.

Hanan: I've lived in Alexandria all my life. I own a restaurant here so I have to say that you must visit my restaurant to try some of the local cuisine. We serve traditional Egyptian food using lovely fresh local ingredients. We have excellent supermarkets, but I prefer to buy my ingredients at the market in the old town.

حنان: لقد عشت في الإسكندرية طوال حياتي. أنا أمتلك مطعمًا هنا لذا يجب أن أقول إنه يجب عليك زيارة مطعمي لتجرب بعض المأكولات المحلية. نحن نقدم الطعام المصري التقليدي باستخدام مكونات محلية طازجة جميلة. لدينا محلات سوبر ماركت ممتازة، لكنني أفضل أن أشتري مستلزماتي من السوق في المدينة القديمة.

Kira and Lena: We're from a small town in England. The stores aren't very good there.
That's what we love most about Alexandria - the shopping malls!
We spend ages walking around them. We like the people. They are so friendly!

كيرا ولينا: نحن من مدينة صغيرة في انجلترا. المتاجر ليست جيدة هناك. وهذا أكثر ما نحبه في الإسكندرية - مراكز التسوق! نقضي فترات طويلة في التجول حولهم. نحن نحب الناس. إنهم ودودون للغاية!

Help your child listen and read.
ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ.

Karim: I'm Egyptian, originally from Cairo. I moved to Alexandria last year and I love it here. I work in a bank. My favorite place is the beach - there isn't one in Cairo! It can get very hot here in summer, so it's great to go there and swim.

كريم: أنا مصري، في الأصل من القاهرة. انتقلت إلى الإسكندرية العام الماضي وأحب المكان هنا. أنا أعمل في بنك. المكان المفضل لدي هو الشاطىء - حيث أنه لا يوجد شاطئ في القاهرة! يمكن أن يكون الجو حارًا جدًا هنا في الصيف، لذلك من الرائع الذهاب إلى هناك والسباحة فيه.

Paulo: I'm on vacation here from Barcelona. I like Alexandria because it reminds me of home - a big, modern city near the sea. I love the mix of modern and old buildings.
Also, I like to find out about the culture and traditions. The library is amazing!

باولو: أنا في إجازة هنا من برشلونة. أحب الإسكندرية لأنها تذكرني بموطني - مدينة كبيرة وحديثة بالقرب من البحر. أحب المزيج بين المباني الحديثة والقديمة. وأيضًا أحب التعرف على الثقافة والتقاليد. المكتبة رائعة!

Listen again. Circle the correct word .

1. Jens likes drinking tea in the (museum - hotel).
2. Hanan buys her ingredients from the (supermarket - market).
3. Kira and Lena like (shopping - swimming) in Alexandria.
4. Karim lives in (Cairo - Alexandria).
5. Paulo likes Alexandria because it is like (Cairo - Barcelona).

Listen and read. استمع واقرأ.

Sara :	I'm going to visit my aunt and uncle. We're going by train. سوف أذهب لزيارة عمي وعمتي. سوف نذهب بالقطار.
Ahmed :	My cousin is visiting us and we're going to show him around. He's never seen the pyramids. سوف يزورنا ابن عمي. وسوف نأخذه في جولة. فهو لم ير الأهرامات من قبل.
Dina :	We went on a school trip to find out how cotton is turned into clothes like T-shirts and dresses. ذهبنا في رحلة مدرسية لنكتشف كيف يتم تحويل القطن إلى ملابس مثل التيشرتات والفساتين.
Youssef :	I want to borrow some books. أريد استعارة بعض الكتب.

Help your child listen and read.
ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ.

Activities

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False. استمع واكتب (T) صح أو (F) خطأ.

1. Alexandria is an exciting place to visit. ( )
2. It isn't a big city. ( )
3. There's a lot to see and do here. ( )
4. There isn't a beach here. ( )

2 Listen and complete. استمع وأكمل.

1. Anas has .... places in his town.
2. Anas has a .... in his town.
3. The shopping mall is ....
4. Anas buys his .... from this mall.

3 Read and match. اقرأ وصل.

1. Jens likes drinking — a) from the market.
2. Hanan buys her ingredients — b) is the beach.
3. I like to find out — c) tea in the hotel.
4. My favorite place — d) about culture and traditions.

1- ( ) 2- ( ) 3- ( ) 4- ( )

4 Read and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d. اقرأ واختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. We have dinner at the ....
   a) bank b) restaurant c) hospital d) museum
2. I go to the .... in summer and enjoy swimming.
   a) beach b) museum c) library d) factory
3. We borrow books from the ....
   a) mall b) bank c) park d) library

4. My dad works in a .... where cotton is turned into clothes.
   a) station b) factory c) school d) post office
5. We catch the train at the ....
   a) station b) factory c) library d) shopping mall
6. I like drinking sweet Egyptian .... tea.
   a) milk b) mint c) hint d) faint
7. I'm Egyptian, ... from Cairo.
   a) original b) originality c) originally d) originate
8. I'm .... vacation here from Barcelona.
   a) in b) on c) at d) by

5 Read the following text and answer the questions. اقرأ النص التالي وأجب عن الأسئلة.

Hanan has lived in Alexandria all her life. She owns a restaurant here so she has to say that you must visit her restaurant to try some of the local cuisine. She serves traditional Egyptian food using lovely fresh local ingredients. Alexandria has excellent supermarkets, but she prefers to buy her ingredients at the market in the old town.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Hanan has lived in .... all her life.
   a) Cairo b) Giza c) Alexandria d) Suez
2. You must visit her .... to try the local cuisine.
   a) café b) restaurant c) club d) hotel

B) Answer the following questions.

3. Where does Hanan prefer to buy her ingredients?
....
4. What does Hanan serve in her restaurant?
....

6 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوّن جملًا صحيحة.

1. station - town - There's - my - a big - in - .

....

2. is - from - Who - Alexandria - ?

....

3. borrow - I - books - to - want - some - .

....

4. Alexandria - last - moved - We - year - to - .

....

7 Write a paragraph of about (40) words.

اكتب فقرة من (40) كلمة.

"Alexandria"

Guiding words:

(exciting place - see and do - amazing - beach - restaurants - hotels)

....

....

....

....

8 Punctuate the following.

ضع علامات الترقيم على ما يلي.

⇨ there's also a library here

....

⇨ why we love Alexndria

....

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Lesson (2) LET'S FIND OUT!

Listen and say.

استمع وقل.



monuments
آثار



artifacts
حرف يدوية



paintings
رسومات



hieroglyphics
الكتابة الهيروغليفية



tomb
مقبرة



water carriers
حاملات الماء

Definitions

تعريفات

evidence	facts that show something is true	دليل
monument	a building or statue	أثر
painting	a picture	لوحة/صورة
tomb	people were buried here when they died	مقبرة
artifacts	objects like vases and pots which were made in the past	حرف يدوية
hieroglyphics	a kind of writing using pictures and symbols	الكتابة الهيروغليفية

Help your child identify these words.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Extra Vocabulary كلمات إضافية

papyrus	ورق البردي	scenes	مناظر	statue	تمثال
facts	حقائق	feasts	أعياد	objects	أشياء
signs	علامات/ إشارات	events	أحداث	pots	أواني
structures	مبانٍ	symbols	رموز	pharaohs	فراعنة

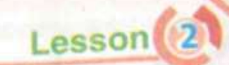
Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة			*Irregular verbs* أفعال غير منتظمة		
Present		Past	Present		Past
exist	يوجد	existed	teach	يُعلم	taught
celebrate	يحتفل	celebrated	build	يبني	built
bury	يدفن	buried	show	يوضح	showed

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

so much	كثيرًا جدًا	such as	مثل
daily life	الحياة اليومية	a kind of	نوع من
tell about	يخبر عن	learn about	يتعلم عن
buried in tombs	يدفن في مقابر	give information	يعطي معلومات
important people	ناس مهمين	special occasions	مناسبات خاصة

Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.



Listen and read. استمع واقرأ.

How do we know so much about life in Ancient Egypt?

There is lots of evidence that tells us about life in Ancient Egypt. Evidence is facts or signs that show clearly that something exists or is true.

كيف نعرف الكثير عن الحياة في مصر القديمة؟
هناك الكثير من الأدلة تخبرنا عن الحياة في مصر القديمة. الدليل هو حقائق أو علامات تدل بوضوح على وجود شيء ما أو أنه صحيح.



We can learn about buildings from ancient monuments.
These are structures that were built to celebrate important people.

يمكننا التعرف على المباني من الآثار القديمة. هذه المباني بنيت للاحتفال بالأشخاص المهمين.



Paintings are on walls or on papyrus. They show scenes of daily life, such as farmers working in the fields, or special occasions, such as feasts and special events.

اللوحات على الجدران أو ورق البردي. وهي تعرض مشاهد من الحياة اليومية، مثل المزارعين وهم يعملون في الحقول، أو المناسبات الخاصة، مثل الأعياد والأحداث الخاصة.



Artifacts are things from daily life like vases and water carriers that tell us how people lived.

المصنوعات اليدوية هي أشياء من الحياة اليومية مثل الزهريات وحاملات الماء التي تخبرنا كيف كان يعيش الناس.

Hieroglyphics are Ancient Egyptian writing symbols and pictures. From hieroglyphics we can get evidence about life in Ancient Egypt.

الكتابة الهيروغليفية هي رموز وصور الكتابة المصرية القديمة. من الكتابة الهيروغليفية يمكننا الحصول على أدلة عن الحياة في مصر القديمة.



Pharaohs and other important people were buried in beautiful tombs. These also had other things people thought they might need and information about their life.

تم دفن الفراعنة وغيرهم من الأشخاص المهمين في مقابر جميلة. وكانت تحتوي أيضًا على أشياء أخرى اعتقد الناس أنهم قد يحتاجون إليها ومعلومات عن حياتهم.

Help your child listen and read.
ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ.

Activities

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False. استمع واكتب (T) صح أو (F) خطأ.

1. Evidence is facts or signs, that show something is true. ( )
2. We can't learn about buildings from ancient monuments. ( )
3. Buildings are structures. ( )
4. Buildings were built to celebrate unknown people. ( )

2 Listen and complete. استمع وأكمل.

1. .... and other important people were buried in tombs.
2. People were buried in .... tombs.
3. The tombs had other .... people might need.
4. The tombs had .... about their life.

3 Read and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d. اقرأ واختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. Monuments teach us about .... in Ancient Egypt.
   a) cars b) life c) evidence d) symbols
2. Monuments were built to .... important people.
   a) write b) read c) do d) celebrate
3. Paintings show special .... in Ancient Egypt.
   a) occasions b) lives c) birds d) ways
4. Important people were buried in ....
   a) caves b) tombs c) deserts d) forests
5. .... are things from daily life like vases and water carriers.
   a) Artifacts b) Signs c) Tombs d) Monuments
6. .... are Ancient Egyptian writing symbols and pictures.
   a) Paintings b) Hieroglyphics c) Letters d) Artifacts

4 Read and match. اقرأ وصل.

1. Evidence is facts that
2. A monument is
3. Pharaohs were buried
4. Artifacts are things
5. A painting is a kind

a) in beautiful tombs.
b) of picture.
c) show something is true.
d) from daily life like vases.
e) a building or statue.

1-( ) 2-( ) 3-( ) 4-( ) 5-( )

5 Read the following text and answer the questions. اقرأ النص التالي وأجب عن الأسئلة.

Ancient Egyptian people were very clever. They built structures to celebrate important people. They wrote about their life using hieroglyphics. They painted on walls or on papyrus. These paintings show scenes of daily life such as farmers working in the fields.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Ancient Egyptian people were very ....
   a) bad b) ugly c) stupid d) clever
2. They wrote about their life using ....
   a) hieroglyphics b) artifacts c) monuments d) tombs

B) Answer the following questions.

3. What do paintings show?
....
4. What does the underlined word "They" refer to?
....



6 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوّن جملًا صحيحة.

1. are - What - hieroglyphics - ?
....
2. walls - are - or - Paintings - on - papyrus - .
....
3. Ancient - life - How - in - Egypt - was - ?
....
4. tell - people - us - Artifacts - how - lived - .
....

7 Write a paragraph of about (40) words.

اكتب فقرة من (40) كلمة.

"Ancient Egypt"

Guiding words:
(monuments - artifacts - paintings - hieroglyphics - tombs)

....
....
....
....

8 Punctuate the following.

ضع علامات الترقيم على ما يلي.

⇨ pharaohs were buried in tombs
....

⇨ what are hieroglyphics
....

Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Lesson (3) DON'T RUN IN THE LIBRARY

Vocabulary كلمات

loudly	بصوت مرتفع	trash can	سلة مهملات
inside	بالداخل	unimportant	غير هام
quietly	بهدوء	voice	صوت الإنسان
upstairs	الطابق العلوي	librarian	أمين / أمينة المكتبة
button	زر	environment	البيئة

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past
waste	يُضيِّع	wasted
wait	ينتظر	waited
push	يدفع للأمام	pushed
return	يُعيد / يعود	returned

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past
choose	يختار	chose
bring	يُحضر	brought
lose	يفقد	lost
wear	يرتدي	wore

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

go inside	يذهب للداخل	stand back	يرجع للخلف
Wait a moment.	انتظر لحظة.	jump up and down	يقفز لأعلى وأسفل
go in (into)	يدخل	return to	يعود إلى
go upstairs	يصعد للطابق العلوي	bring back	يُرجع
pick up	يلتقط	begin with	يبدأ بـ

Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Imperative

صيغة الأمر

Usage: الاستخدام:

- **We use imperatives to tell someone to do or not to do something.**
نستخدم صيغ الأمر لنخبر شخصًا ما أن يفعل أو لا يفعل شيء ما.

e.g. - Stand up. e.g. - Don't run.

Form: التكوين:

- **To make the affirmative imperatives use, the "infinitive" without "to".**
لتكوين الأمر المثبت استخدم مصدر الفعل بدون "to".

e.g. - Open the door, please.
- Please, pick up that trash.
- Put the cake in the oven,please.

- **To make negative imperatives use, "don't + infinitive" without "to".**
لتكوين الأمر المنفي استخدم (المصدر + don't) بدون "to".

e.g. - Don't eat in the library, please.
- Don't waste your time.

1 Read and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

اقرأ واختر الإجابة الصحيحة

1. .... open the door. It's hot.
a) Didn't b) Don't c) Doesn't d) Isn't
2. .... your room. It's dirty.
a) Clean b) Cleans c) Cleaned d) Cleaning
3. .... eat in the library.
a) Isn't b) Aren't c) Don't d) Can't

Help your child identify imperatives.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على صيغة الأمر.

4. .... into the elevator.
a) Goes b) Go c) Going d) Went
5. Don't .... up and down.
a) jumping b) jumped c) jump d) jumps
6. Don't .... your time.
a) waste b) wastes c) wasting d) wasted
7. .... the cake in the oven.
a) Puts b) Put c) Putting d) Put to
8. .... up that trash.
a) Pick b) Picks c) Picked d) Picking
9. Don't .... late tomorrow.
a) is b) be c) are d) was
10. .... quietly in the library.
a) Talk b) Talks c) Talking d) Talked

2 Rewrite the rules with imperatives.

أعد كتابة الآتي بصيغة الأمر

1. You shouldn't talk loudly. Don't talk loudly.
2. You have to stand back. ....
3. You need to eat healthy food. ....
4. You can't be late. ....
5. You shouldn't make noise. ....
6. You should listen to me carefully. ....

Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.



Activities

1 Listen and complete. استمع وأكمل.

1. The children are visiting Alexandria ....
2. Reem says it's ....
3. The teacher asks Reem to .... a moment.
4. The teacher tells Ali not to ....

2 Read and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d. اقرأ واختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. .... fruits and vegetables to stay healthy.
   a) Eats b) Don't eat c) Eat d) Eating
2. .... eat in the library.
   a) Don't b) Doesn't c) Didn't d) Isn't
3. .... your book back in two weeks.
   a) Bringing b) Brings c) Bring d) Brought
4. Don't .... your water inside.
   a) drinks b) drink c) drinking d) drank
5. .... use your mobile phone here.
   a) Can't b) Aren't c) Don't d) Doesn't
6. Don't .... your book.
   a) lose b) loses c) losing d) lost

3 Reorder the words to make correct sentences. أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوّن جملًا صحيحة.

1. noise - Stop - and - making - to - me - listen - .
....
2. up - bus - Hurry - or - miss - you'll - the - .
....
3. write - book - Don't - the - in - .
....



4. talk - Don't - loudly - .
....

4 Read and match. اقرأ وصل.

1. Don't be unkind
2. Study the lesson again
3. Don't come late or you will
4. Don't tell

a. to your friends.
b. miss the first lesson.
c. anyone your password.
d. and do the exercise.

1- ( ) 2- ( ) 3- ( ) 4- ( )

5 Write a paragraph of about (40) words. اكتب فقرة من (40) كلمة.

"What should or shouldn't you do inside a park?"

Guiding words:
(environment - park - flowers - help - trash can)

....
....
....
....
....
....

6 Punctuate the following. ضع علامات الترقيم على ما يلي.

⇨ keep the environment clean
....

⇨ don't write short sentences
....



GABI LEARNS A LESSON

Vocabulary كلمات

ibis	طائر أبو منجل	jerboa	حيوان اليربوع	enormous	ضخم
sacks	أكياس	rudely	بوقاحة	land	أرض
creature	مخلوق	foolish	أحمق	far	بعيد

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

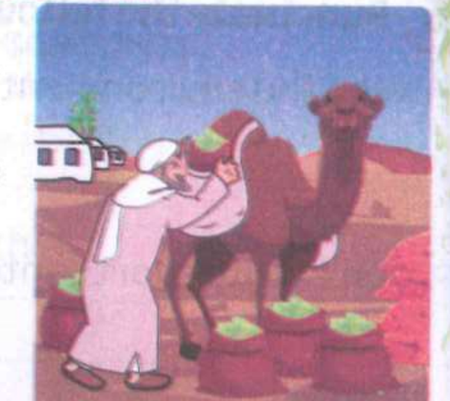
Present		Past	Present		Past
recognize	يتعرف على	recognized	fly	يطير	flew
entertain	يسلي	entertained	begin	يبدأ	began
apologize	يعتذر	apologized	sleep	ينام	slept
pretend	يتظاهر	pretended	offer	يعرض	offered

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

walk along	يمشي بطول	strange-looking	غريب الشكل
watch from	يراقب من	telling the truth	يقول الحقيقة

Listen and read. استمع واقرأ.

Gabi Learns A lesson
جابي يتعلم درسا



One day, a villager wanted to sell his beans in the market, but he couldn't walk far. His camel, Gabi, said, "Give me the sacks of beans - I will take them to the market for you."
Gabi walked along the road. He turned left and then right and then

Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

left again. Soon, Gabi didn't recognize the road.

في أحد الأيام، أراد أحد القرويين بيع حبوبه في السوق. لكنه لم يكن يستطيع المشي لمسافة بعيدة. قال جمله جابي: «أعطني أكياس الحبوب - سوف آخذها إلى السوق من أجلك.» سار جابي على طول الطريق. واتجه يسارًا ثم يمينًا ثم يسارًا مرة أخرى وسرعان ما لم يتعرف جابي على الطريق.

"Are you lost?" called an ibis. Gabi had never seen such a strange-looking bird.
"No, I'm not lost," pretended Gabi. Gabi didn't know that the ibis could fly high above the land and tell him the way.
Gabi saw a snake, watching him from the branches of a tree.
"You look lost," said the snake.
"No, I'm not," said Gabi - again he wasn't telling the truth.
"Anyway, even if I was, you can't help - you haven't even got legs," he said unkindly. Gabi didn't know that the snake went to the market every day to entertain the crowds.

نادى عليه «أبو منجل» : «هل أنت تائه؟» لم يرى جابي مثل هذا الطائر الغريب من قبل. تظاهر جابي وقال: «لا. لست تائهًا.
لم يكن جابي يعلم أن طائر أبو منجل يمكن أن يطير عاليًا فوق الأرض ويخبره بالطريق.
رأى جابي ثعبانًا يراقبه من أغصان شجرة. قال الثعبان: «تبدو تائهًا.»
قال جابي: «لا. لست كذلك.» مرة أخرى لم يكن يقول الحقيقة. قال بقسوة: «على أي حال، حتى لو كنت كذلك، لا يمكنك المساعدة - أنت حتى ليس لديك أرجل.» لم يكن جابي يعرف أن الثعبان يذهب إلى السوق كل يوم لكي يسلي حشود الناس.

It began to get dark. Gabi saw a little animal on the road in front of him.
"What a funny-looking creature. Look at those enormous ears," he thought to himself.
"Hello," said the jerboa. "Do you need any help?"
"No, I don't!" replied Gabi rudely. Gabi didn't know that the jerboa could hear the sounds of the market traders.
"OK, good night then," called the jerboa.
Soon, it was completely dark and Gabi understood he needed the animals' help. He knew he was foolish and he was sorry.
He decided to go to sleep, and to apologize and ask for their help the next day.

بدأ الجو يظلم. رأى جابي حيوانًا صغيرًا على الطريق أمامه.
فكر مع نفسه وقال: «يا له من مخلوق شكله مضحك. انظر إلى تلك الآذان الضخمة». قال اليربوع: «مرحبًا. هل تحتاج أي مساعدة؟» رد جابي بوقاحة: « لا. لا أحتاج» لم يكن جابي يعرف أن اليربوع يمكن أن يسمع أصوات تجار السوق. قال اليربوع: «حسنًا. تصبح على خير إذن.» عندما حل الظلام تمامًا وأدرك جابي أنه بحاجة إلى مساعدة الحيوانات. كان يعلم أنه كان أحمقًا وكان أسفًا. قرر أن ينام وأن يعتذر ويطلب مساعدتهم في اليوم التالي.

Help your child listen and read.
ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ.

PRONUNCIATION

Tip! "Homophones"

- Some words have the same sounds but they are different in spelling and meaning.

بعض الكلمات لها نفس النطق ولكنها تختلف في المعنى والهجاء.

eight → ate　right → write　wear → were

Listen and Learn.

استمع وتعلم.

1		2		3		4	
go	يذهب	bite	يعض	boy	ولد	make	يعمل
show	يعرض	right	صواب	toy	لعبة	play	يلعب
grow	يزرع	write	يكتب	enjoy	يستمتع	cake	كيك
wrote	كتب	time	وقت	point	يشير	bake	يخبز

Study the following sentences:

1. I have a bad toothache.
2. Look! There are eight trees in the garden.
3. Let's bake a cake for my birthday!
4. Does the farmer grow vegetables?



Help your child learn about homophones.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعلم الكلمات المتماثلة صوتيًا.



CLIL: MATH

- Estimated answer isn't the actual answer. It's a good guess.

- الإجابة التقديرية ليست الإجابة الفعلية ولكنها تخمين جيد.

e.g. 12 + 17 is about 30.

- To say estimated answer, we can use: لنقول الإجابة التقديرية نستخدم:

It's about ... / It's around ... } تقريبًا　It's near ... / It's close to ... } تقريبًا



Circle the correct estimated answer.

1. 34+ 47= (60 - 80 - 120)
2. 77 + 120= (80 - 130 - 200)
3. 338+336= (480 - 680 - 980)
4. 1050+50+104= (1000 - 1200 - 2000)
5. 17+39+44+308= (300 - 400 - 500)

Help your child learn about estimated answer.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعلم أن يجيب باستخدام التقريب.

Activities

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False. استمع واكتب (T) صح أو (F) خطأ.

1. A villager wanted to sell his beans. ( )
2. The villager could walk far. ( )
3. The camel took the beans to the supermarket. ( )
4. His camel helped him and took the beans. ( )

2 Listen and complete. استمع وأكمل.

1. The camel took the .... of beans to the market.
2. It walked .... the road.
3. It didn't .... the road.
4. The camel lost its ....

3 Read and match. اقرأ وصل.

1. The jerboa
2. "Eight" has the same
3. What's 20 + 19?
4. The camel offered
5. The ibis could

a. sound as "ate".
b. It's near 40.
c. could hear well.
d. fly high in the sky.
e. to help the villager.

1-( ) 2-( ) 3-( ) 4-( ) 5-( )

4 Read the following text and answer the questions. اقرأ النص التالي وأجب عن الأسئلة.

At first, Gabi offered to help the villager by taking the sacks of beans to the market. He lost his way but he didn't want anyone to know that he was lost. The ibis could help him because he could fly over the land. The snake could help because he went to the market every day. At the end, he learnt that asking for help is good.

A) Choose the correct answer from a,b, c or d.

1. Gabi offered to help the ....
   a) snake b) villager c) jerboa d) ibis
2. The jerboa could .... well with its big ears.
   a) hear b) smell c) taste d) play

B) Answer the following questions.

3. Where did the snake go every day?
   ....
4. What lesson did Gabi learn?
   ....

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences. أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوّن جملًا صحيحة.

1. farmer - vegetables - Does - grow - the - ?
   ....
2. toothache - I - bad - a - have - .
   ....
3. animal - first - does - Which - Gabi - meet - ?
   ....
4. cake - birthday - Let's - for - make - a - my - .
   ....

6 Write a paragraph of about (40) words. اكتب فقرة من (40) كلمة.

"Going to the market and getting lost"

Guiding words:
(mom - asked - market - lost - didn't ask - sorry - learnt a lesson)

....

7 Punctuate the following. ضع علامات الترقيم على ما يلي.

⇨ Was ahmed right to behave in this way

....



- WRITING
- PROJECT

Vocabulary كلمات

tourist attractions	المعالم السياحية	relaxing	مريح
Buckingham Palace	قصر باكنجهام	delicious	لذيذ
The River Thames	نهر التايمز	famous	مشهور
Archaeological center	المركز الأثري	treasures	كنوز
The British Museum	المتحف البريطاني	New Alamein	مدينة العلمين الجديدة
International Park	المتنزه الدولي	water park	متنزه مائي

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Present		Past	Present		Past
rain	تمطر	rained	make	يجعل / يصنع	made
choose	يختار	chose	find	يجد	found

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

It doesn't matter.	لا يهم.	plenty of	كثير من
lots of fun things	كثير من الأشياء الممتعة	in the middle of	في وسط
from all over the world	من كل أنحاء العالم	Don't worry.	لا تقلق.

Tip!:

When you are trying to encourage people to go to a place, use positive adjectives to describe the place.

عندما تحاول إقناع أشخاص بالذهاب إلى مكان، استخدم صفات إيجابية لوصف هذا المكان.
وفيما يلي بعض الصفات الإيجابية:

exciting	مثير	beautiful	جميل	delicious	لذيذ
famous	مشهور	fascinating	ساحر / خلاب	amazing	مذهل
relaxing	مريح	perfect	كامل / مثالي	wonderful	رائع

Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Listen and read. استمع واقرأ.



This is one of the most exciting cities in the world. It often rains here, but it doesn't matter because there are lots of fun things to do. You can go on a big red bus and visit amazing tourist attractions.

هذه واحدة من أكثر المدن إثارة في العالم. غالبًا ما تمطر هنا، ولكن لا يهم لأن هناك الكثير من الأشياء الممتعة التي يمكنك القيام بها. يمكنك الذهاب في حافلة حمراء كبيرة وزيارة المعالم السياحية المذهلة.

You will see famous places like Buckingham Palace, theaters, and the British Museum. You can take a relaxing boat trip on the River Thames and go under the famous bridges. All the walking around will make you hungry! But don't worry, there are plenty of different restaurants to choose from. You can find delicious food from all over the world here!

سترى أماكن مشهورة مثل قصر باكنجهام والمسارح والمتحف البريطاني. يمكنك القيام برحلة استرخاء بالقارب على نهر التايمز والسير أسفل الجسور الشهيرة. سيجعلك كل هذا التجول تشعر بالجوع! ولكن لا تقلق، فهناك كثير من المطاعم المختلفة للاختيار من بينها. يمكنك أن تجد طعامًا لذيذًا من جميع أنحاء العالم!

- To write a description of your own town or city to encourage people to visit it, write notes about the good things.

لكي تكتب وصفًا لمدينتك الصغيرة أو الكبيرة لكي تشجع الناس على زيارتها، اكتب ملاحظات عن الأشياء الجيدة.

1- famous attractions المعالم السياحية المشهورة

2- location - is it near a beach/river? الموقع - هل هي قريبة من شاطئ/نهر؟

3- history - culture - arts التاريخ/ الثقافة/ الفنون

Help your child read about a famous city.
ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ عن مدينة مشهورة.



NEW ALAMEIN



There are many exciting things to do in New Alamein. The city is on the beach so you can visit the cool sea when it's hot. This beautiful beach is 14 kms long! There is also a large, green lake right in the middle of the city! You can also visit the beautiful International Park. If you want to learn about the fascinating history of the area, then visit the Archaeological Center. There are some amazing treasures there. I can't wait to see you in New Alamein.

مدينة العلمين الجديدة
هناك العديد من الأشياء المثيرة التي يمكنك القيام بها في مدينة العلمين الجديدة. تقع المدينة على الشاطئ، لذلك يمكنك الذهاب إلى البحر عندما يكون الجو حارًا. وهذا الشاطئ الجميل طوله 14 كم! يوجد أيضًا بحيرة خضراء كبيرة تمامًا في وسط المدينة! يمكنك أيضًا زيارة الحديقة الدولية الجميلة. إذا كنت ترغب في التعرف على التاريخ الرائع للمنطقة، قم بزيارة المركز الأثري. توجد بعض الكنوز المدهشة هناك. لا أستطيع الانتظار لرؤيتك في مدينة العلمين الجديدة.

Our perfect town



In our perfect town, there is a big zoo right next to the school. We can go there every afternoon after classes.
We can help to feed the animals.
It is really hot in our town, so there is a water park that is always open. It's free to go in!
There is a wonderful market that sells all kinds of delicious food, like fresh bread and fresh fruit and vegetables.
There is a big park with lots of trees so we can go for family picnics in the shade.
This is our perfect town!

مدينتنا المثالية
في مدينتنا المثالية، توجد حديقة حيوانات كبيرة بجوار المدرسة مباشرة. يمكننا الذهاب إلى هناك بعد الظهر كل يوم بعد انتهاء الحصص. يمكننا المساعدة في إطعام الحيوانات.
الجو حار جدًا في مدينتنا، لذا توجد حديقة مائية مفتوحة دائمًا. الدخول مجاني!
يوجد سوق رائع يبيع جميع أنواع الأطعمة الشهية، مثل الخبز الطازج والفواكه والخضروات الطازجة.
توجد حديقة كبيرة بها الكثير من الأشجار لذا يمكننا الذهاب في نزهات عائلية في الظل
هذه مدينتنا المثالية!

Help your child write a paragraph.
ساعد طفلك أن يكتب فقرة.

Activities

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False. استمع واكتب (T) صح أو (F) خطأ

1. This is our perfect town. ( )
2. There is a big library next to the school. ( )
3. We can go to the zoo after classes. ( )
4. The water park isn't free. ( )

2 Listen and complete. استمع وأكمل.

1. There's a .... market in our town.
2. The market sells all kinds of .... food.
3. There's a .... park with lots of trees.
4. We can go for family picnics in the ....

3 Read and match. اقرأ وصل.

1. London is one of the	a. sells all kinds of food.
2. There's a big market that	b. middle of the city.
3. You can visit the beautiful	c. on the beach.
4. There's a lake in the	d. most exciting cities.
5. The city is	e. International Park.

1-( ) 2-( ) 3-( ) 4-( ) 5-( )

Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

4 Read the following text and answer the questions.

اقرأ النص التالي وأجب عن الأسئلة.

There are many exciting things to do in New Alamein. The city is on the beach so you can visit the cool sea when it's hot. This beautiful beach is 14 kms long! There is also a large, green lake right in the middle of the city! You can also visit the beautiful International Park. If you want to learn about the fascinating history of the area, then visit the Archaeological Center. There are some amazing treasures there. I can't wait to see you in New Alamein.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The passage is about ....

a) Alexandria b) Suez c) New Alamein d) Ismalia

2. The beach is .... kms long.

a) 18 b) 14 c) 20 d) 40

B) Answer the following questions.

3. What can you visit when it's hot?

....

4. Where can you see amazing treasures?

....

5 Read and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

اقرأ واختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. London is one of the most exciting .... in the world.

a) countries b) cities c) towns d) villages

2. In London you can visit amazing tourist ....

a) habitats b) attractions c) precipitation d) stations

3. Buckingham is a ....

a) zoo b) hospital c) palace d) museum

4. You can take a .... trip on the River Thames.

a) bus b) boat c) car d) train

5. The city is on the .... so you can swim when it's hot.

a) beach b) desert c) park d) garden

6 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوّن جملًا صحيحة.

1. are - treasures - There - amazing - some - .

....

2. is - Alamein - Where - New - ?

....

3. free - water park - The - is - in - to - go - .

....

4. places - London - What - visit - can - in - you - ?

....

7 Write a paragraph of about (40) words.

اكتب فقرة من (40) كلمة.

"My perfect town"

Guiding words:

(water park - zoo - markets - restaurants - shopping malls)

....

....

....

....

....

Review on Unit (10)

Places in a city

museum	متحف	bank	بنك	factory	مصنع
restaurant	مطعم	library	مكتبة	monument	أثر
market	سوق	square	ميدان	shopping mall	مركز تسوق
beach	شاطئ	station	محطة	cuisine	مطبخ

Activities

play music	يعزف موسيقى	make a phone call	يجري اتصال هاتفي
bake bread	يخبز خبز	visit a temple	يزور معبد
read a book	يقرأ كتاب	sail on the Nile	يبحر على النيل

Ancient Egypt

monuments	آثار	pharaohs	فراعنة	tomb	مقبرة
on vacation	في إجازة	artifact	حرفة يدوية	originally	أصلاً
hieroglyphics	الكتابة الهيروغليفية	evidence	دليل	painting	الرسم

Language

- Don't be late tomorrow.
- Come here, Lama!
- Go to the end of the street and turn right.

Phonics

/əʊ/	/eɪ/	/ɔɪ/	/aɪ/
show	eight	toy	right
go	make	boy	night
grow	bake	enjoy	write



Math

- What's 88+90+27?
- It's around 200.

Writing Corner

Write a paragraph of about (40) words. اكتب فقرة من (40) كلمة.

"Alexandria"

Alexandria is a very beautiful city. It is on the sea. We go to the beach when it is hot. We swim in the sea. We play on the beach. It has interesting places to visit. You can also visit the Citadel and many other places.

"London"

London is an exciting city. There are lots of fun things to do. You can go on a big red bus and visit amazing tourist attractions. You can take a relaxing boat trip on the River Thames. You can find delicious food from all over the world there. London is full of history.

"New Alamein"

There are many exciting things to do in New Alamein. The city is on the beach so you can visit the cool sea when it's hot. This beautiful beach is 14 kms long! There is also a large green lake right in the middle of the city! You can also visit the beautiful International Park. If you want to learn about the fascinating history of area, then visit the Archaeological Center.

Dictation on Unit (10)

Lesson (1)

Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning
....	متحف	....	بنك
....	نعناع	....	شاطئ
....	طبخ	....	نصب تذكاري
....	سوق	....	محطة
....	مكتبة	....	مصنع

Lesson (2)

Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning
....	دليل	....	مقابر
....	أثر	....	ورق بردي
....	دهان / تلوين	....	رموز
....	حرف يدوية	....	هام / مهم
....	الكتابة الهيروغليفية	....	يحتفل

Lessons (3) & (4)

Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning
....	زر	....	اليربوع
....	أمين المكتبة	....	ضخم
....	بيئة	....	بعيد
....	مخلوق	....	يعتذر
....	أبو منجل	....	يُسلي

Lessons (5 & 6)

Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning
....	أماكن جذب سياحي	....	مثالي
....	مسترخي / مريح	....	متنزه مائي
....	لذيذ	....	كنوز
....	موقع	....	قصر
....	ثقافة	....	تاريخ

Help your child dictate these words.
ساعد طفلك في إملاء هذه الكلمات.

Activities on Unit (10)

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False. استمع واكتب (T) صح أو (F) خطأ.

1. We don't know much about Ancient Egypt. ( )
2. There's a lot of evidence that tell us about Ancient Egypt. ( )
3. Artifacts don't tell us how people lived. ( )
4. Paintings show scenes of daily life. ( )

2 Listen and complete. استمع وأكمل.

1. Seif went to ....
2. London has lots of .... attractions.
3. Seif visited the .... Museum.
4. Seif took a boat .... on the River Thames.

3 Read and match. اقرأ وصل.

1	They will be around	a	help the villager.
2	Does the farmer	b	lunch with us.
3	Gabi offered to	c	50 Egyptian pounds.
4	Come and have	d	back in two weeks.
5	Bring your book	e	grow vegetables?

1-( ) 2-( ) 3-( ) 4-( ) 5-( )

Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

4 Read the following text and answer the questions.

اقرأ النص التالي وأجب عن الأسئلة.

Luxor is a wonderful city. I went there last winter. The weather there is hot in winter. The city is full of history. You can see and visit many temples there. This beautiful city is in Upper Egypt. It has wonderful hotels. They serve delicious food there. I visited the Valley of the Kings and Queens. I took a boat trip on the Nile. I had a wonderful time there.

A) Choose the correct answer from a,b, c or d.

1. Luxor is a .... city.
   a) wonderful b) bad c) boring d) ugly
2. The city is full of ....
   a) geography b) history c) science d) math

B) Answer the following questions.

3. Where is Luxor?
   ....
4. What did you take on the Nile?
   ....

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوّن جملًا صحيحة.

1. safely - keep - bank - I - in - money - a - .
   ....
2. the market - does - What - sell - ?
   ....
3. toothache - bad - a - I - have - .
   ....
4. is - school - to - There - the - a big - next - zoo - .
   ....

6 Punctuate the following.

ضع علامات الترقيم على ما يلي.

- it's around 200
  ....
- what lesson did Gabi learn
  ....

7 Write a paragraph of about (40) words.

اكتب فقرة من (40) كلمة.

"Giza"

Guiding words:

(wonderful - city - the Pyramids - the Sphinx - the Nile - farms and fields)

....
....
....
....
....

Unit 11 Getting out in the fresh air

الخروج في الهواء الطلق

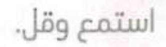


In this unit the student will ... في هذه الوحدة الطالب سوف.......

- listen, read, research, and write about nature trails.
  يستمع ويقرأ ويبحث ويكتب عن متنزهات الطبيعة.
- recognize adjectives and adverbs. يتعرف على الصفات والظروف (الأحوال).
- learn words about nature. يتعلم كلمات عن الطبيعة.
- listen to a conversation about hiking. يستمع إلى محادثة عن التجول.
- read about hiking in the Red Sea Mountain Trail.
  يقرأ عن التجول في متنزه جبل البحر الأحمر
- read and say words with /n/ and /ŋ/ sounds. يقرأ ويقول كلمات بها أصوات /n/ و /ŋ/
- write text messages. يكتب رسائل نصية.
- design a nature trail. يصمم متنزه طبيعي.



Lesson (1) GETTING OUT IN NATURE



Listen and say. استمع وقل.



village
قرية



city
مدينة كبيرة



hill
تل



rock
صخرة



Nature
الطبيعة



leaf
ورقة شجر



plant
نبات



stream
جدول ماء



grass
حشائش



tree
شجرة

Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Study the following:

1. A stream is like a river, but smaller.
جدول الماء مثل النهر ولكنه أصغر.

2. I love the feeling of green grass under my feet.
أحب الشعور بملمس الحشائش الخضراء تحت أقدامي.

3. A tree is a very tall plant with branches and wooden trunk.
الشجرة هي نبات طويل بأغصان وجذع خشبي.

4. A village is much smaller than a town or city.
القرية أصغر بكثير من المدينة الصغيرة أو المدينة الكبيرة.

5. It's quite difficult to climb that hill because it's very high.
إنه صعب إلى حدّ ما أن نتسلق ذلك التل لأنه عالي جدًا.

6. Some famous cities in Egypt are Cairo, Alexandria and Hurghada.
بعض المدن المشهورة في مصر هي القاهرة والإسكندرية والغردقة.

7. A rock is hard. It is a large stone.
الصخرة صلبة. وهي حجر كبير.

8. I like growing tomato plants because I like eating tomatoes.
أحب زراعة نبات الطماطم لأنني أحب تناولها.

9. That plant has flowers and lots of green leaves.
هذا النبات له زهور والكثير من الأوراق الخضراء.

Help your child study these sentences.
ساعد طفلك أن يدرس هذه الجمل.

Tip

Plural Nouns الأسماء الجمع

-To make plurals, we usually add (s) to the noun.
-للتحويل إلى الجمع يتم عادة إضافة (s) في نهاية الاسم.






e.g. a house → houses a hill → hills

-If the noun ends in (-y), then we take off the "y" and add (ies):
-الاسم الذي ينتهي بـ (-y) قبلها ساكن يحذف ثم يضاف (ies).






e.g. a city → cities a baby → babies

-If the noun ends in (-f), then we take off the (-f) and add (-ves):
-الاسم الذي ينتهي بـ (-f) يحذف ثم يضاف (ves).






e.g. a leaf → leaves a wolf → wolves

Change into plural.
حول للجمع.

a pen →	a wolf → ....
a house →	an orange → ....
a city →	a rock → ....
a leaf →	a baby → ....

Help your child identify how to change singular nouns into plural.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على كيفية تحويل الأسماء المفردة إلى جمع.



Activities

1 Read and match. اقرأ وصل

1. A stream is like
2. A tree is a
3. A rock is
4. Cairo and Alexandria

a) very tall plant.
b) are famous cities.
c) a river, but smaller.
d) a large stone.
e) green leaves.

1-( ) 2-( ) 3-( ) 4-( )

2 Read and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d. اقرأ واختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. A .... is like a river, but smaller.
   a) hill b) leaf c) stream d) rock
2. I love the feeling of green .... under my feet.
   a) hill b) city c) rock d) grass
3. A .... is a very tall plant with branches and wooden trunk.
   a) rock b) tree c) stream d) leaf
4. A .... is much smaller than a town or city.
   a) rock b) stream c) village d) hill
5. The .... is very high.
   a) hill b) stream c) plant d) leaf
6. Some famous .... in Egypt are Cairo, Alexandria and Hurghada.
   a) villages b) rocks c) streams d) cities

7. A .... is hard. It is a large stone.
   a) rock b) stream c) hill d) grass
8. I like growing tomato .... because I like eating tomatoes.
   a) hills b) plants c) rocks d) streams
9. That plant has flowers and lots of green ....
   a) cities b) houses c) leaves d) rocks

3 Reorder the words to make correct sentences. أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوّن جملًا صحيحة.

1. like - is - A stream - a river - smaller - but - .
   ....
2. stone - large - A rock - is - a - .
   ....
3. plants - I - growing - like - tomato - .
   ....
4. feeling - grass - I - green - like - of - the - .
   ....

4 Punctuate the following. ضع علامات الترقيم على ما يلي.

⇨ i can see some trees

....

5 Write a paragraph of about (40) words. اكتب فقرة من (40) كلمة.

Getting out in nature

Guiding words:
(see - trees - stream - grass - hills)

....
....
....



Lesson (2) NATURE TRAIL WEEKEND

Key Vocabulary كلمات رئيسية

nature trail	متنزه طبيعي	taking photos	التقاط الصور
dates	تواريخ	brave	شجاع
The blue lagoon	البحيرة الزرقاء		



Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
guess	يخمن	guessed	talk	يتكلم	talked
invite	يدعو	invited	contact	يتصل بـ	contacted
accept	يقبل	accepted	walk	يمشي	walked
work	يعمل	worked	open	يفتح	opened
check	يفحص	checked	decide	يقرر	decided

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
go	يذهب	went	speak	يتحدث	spoke
write	يكتب	wrote	drive	يقود	drove

Nature trail (n) : A place you go for a hike in nature to see all the plants and animals.

المتنزه الطبيعي : هو مكان في الطبيعة تتمشى فيه لترى كل النباتات والحيوانات.

Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Listen and read. استمع واقرأ.

From : Dina
To : Reem
Subject : Nature trail weekend

Hi Reem, How's life?

Guess what? My family and I want to go on a trail to Wadi Degla or the Blue Lagoon at Dahab. Mom said I can take a friend, and I want to take you! Can you come? Mom said you and I can decide which we like best of the two places. Wadi Degla is cool because you can see lots of animals, but you can swim at the Blue Lagoon! I know you walk quickly and swim well, so which nature trail do you like? Also, what dates do you prefer, 13-14 July or 20-21 July?

Bye for now!

Dina

من: دينا
إلى: ريم
الموضوع: عطلة نهاية الأسبوع في متنزه طبيعي.
مرحبًا ريم،
كيف الحال؟
خمني ماذا؟ أريد أنا وعائلتي الذهاب في طريق إلى وادي دجلة أو البحيرة الزرقاء في مدينة دهب. قالت أمي إنني أستطيع أن آخذ صديقًا، وأريد أن آخذك! هل يمكنك أن تأتي؟ قالت أمي إنه يمكنني أنا وأنت أن نقرر أي المكانين نحبهما أكثر. وادي دجلة رائع لأنه يمكنك رؤية الكثير من الحيوانات، ولكن يمكنك السباحة في البحيرة الزرقاء! أعلم أنك تمشين بسرعة وتسبحين جيدًا، فما هو المسار الطبيعي الذي تحبينه؟ وأيضًا، ما التواريخ التي تفضلينها ١٣ - ١٤ يوليو أو ٢٠ - ٢١ يوليو؟
إلى اللقاء!
دينا

Help your child listen and read an email.
ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ بريد إلكتروني.

Reply الرد

From :	Reem
To :	Dina
Subject :	Nature trail weekend

Hi Dina,

Life's great! How are you?

The nature trail trip sounds like fun, and I really want to come! I think the Blue Lagoon is fine because we can swim and dive! Yes, I can swim quickly, but you're very brave! Remember when you dived from that rock? I just talked to my mom and the weekend 20-21 July is good for me. She's going to call your mom to check everything.

Can't wait to see you!

Reem

من: ريم

إلى: دينا

الموضوع: رد: عطلة نهاية الأسبوع في متنزه طبيعي

مرحبًا دينا،

الحياة رائعة! كيف حالك؟

تبدو رحلة التنزه في الطبيعة ممتعة، وأريد حقًا أن آتي! أعتقد أن البحيرة الزرقاء جيدة لأننا يمكننا السباحة والغوص! نعم، يمكنني السباحة بسرعة، ولكنك شجاعة جدًا! هل تتذكرين عندما قمتي بالغوص عند تلك الصخرة؟ لقد تحدثت للتو مع أمي وعطلة نهاية الأسبوع ٢٠ - ٢١ يوليو جيدة بالنسبة لي. سوف تتصل بأمك للتحقق من كل شيء.

لا أستطيع الانتظار لرؤيتك!

ريم

Help your child learn to reply an email.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعلم أن يرد على بريد إلكتروني.

Adjectives الصفات





Usage: الاستخدام

- **We use adjectives to give more information about nouns.**

نستخدم (الصفات) لإعطاء معلومات إضافية عن الأسماء.

e.g. It was a sunny day.

Adverbs الأحوال



Usage: الاستخدام

- **We use adverbs to give more information about verbs.**

نستخدم (الأحوال) لإعطاء معلومات إضافية عن الأفعال.

e.g. She walked slowly.

- **To make adverbs, we usually add (-ly) to an adjective.**

لتكوين (الأحوال)، عادةً نضيف (ly) في نهاية الصفة.

slow → slowly   sad → sadly

Note:

- **If the adjective ends in (consonant + y) then delete the (-y) and add (-ily).**

إذا كانت الصفة تنتهي بـ(y) يسبقها حرف ساكن تحذف (y) ثم يضاف (ily)

happy → happily   heavy → heavily

- **If the adjective ends in (l), we add (ly) too.**

إذا كانت الصفة تنتهي بـ(l)، نضع (ly) أيضًا.

beautiful → beautifully

Help your child recognize adjectives and adverbs.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على الصفات والأحوال.



Regular adverbs الأحوال المنتظمة

adjective	adverb	adjective	adverb
happy سعيد	happily بسعادة	heavy ثقيل	heavily بثقل
slow بطئ	slowly ببطء	sad حزين	sadly بحزن
quick سريع	quickly بسرعة	careful حريص	carefully بحرص
nice لطيف	nicely بلطف	bad سيئ	badly بسوء
nervous عصبي	nervously بعصبية	polite مؤدب	politely بأدب
clever ماهر	cleverly بمهارة	active نشيط	actively بنشاط

Irregular adverbs الأحوال الغير منتظمة

adjective	adverb	adjective	adverb
fast سريع	fast بسرعة	hard صعب / جاد	hard بجد
good جيد	well جيدًا	early مبكر	early مبكرًا

Study the following.

1. Wael swims well. He is a good swimmer.
2. Salma runs quickly. She is a quick runner.
3. Jailan speaks politely. She is a polite girl.

-Read and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. My friend is a .... person.
   a) nice b) nicer c) nicely d) badly
2. My sister says I sing ....
   a) bad b) badly c) good d) worse
3. The man opened the door ....
   a) nervous b) nervously c) good d) bad
4. Adam drove the car ....
   a) fast b) fastly c) heavy d) clever

Help your child learn irregular adverbs.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعلم الأحوال الغير منتظمة.

Activities

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False. استمع واكتب (T) صح أو (F) خطأ.

1. My family and I want to go on a trail. ( )
2. I can't take a friend. ( )
3. We can swim at Wadi Degla. ( )
4. You can see lots of animals in Wadi Degla. ( )

2 Read and match. اقرأ وصل.

1. The nature trail trip
2. He swims well.
3. Jana speaks politely.
4. It was raining

a) very heavily.
b) sounds like fun.
c) She is a polite girl.
d) He is a good swimmer.
e) happily ever after.

1-( ) 2-( ) 3-( ) 4-( )

3 Read and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d. اقرأ واختر الإجابة الصحيحة

1. She walked .... down the street.
   a) slow b) slowly c) slower d) slowest
2. He did his homework ....
   a) happily b) happy c) happier d) happiest
3. Salma runs quickly. She is a .... runner.
   a) quicker b) quickest c) quickly d) quick
4. Jailan speaks .... She is a polite girl.
   a) polite b) politely c) bad d) good
5. My dad speaks Spanish really ....
   a) good b) bad c) well d) careful
6. Hatem is a .... designer.
   a) cleverly b) cleverer c) clever d) cleverest

Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة

4 Read the following text and answer the questions.

اقرأ النص التالي وأجب عن الأسئلة.

Hi Dina,
The nature trail trip sounds like fun, and I really want to go. I think the Blue Lagoon is fine because we can swim and dive. I can swim quickly but you're very brave. I just talked to my mom and the weekend (20-21) July is good for me. She's going to call your mom to check everything.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The underlined word "fine" means ....
   a) bad   b) badly   c) good   d) worse
2. The writer can swim ....
   a) quickly   b) quick   c) slow   d) slowly

B) Answer the following questions.

3. Where are they going? ....
4. Why do you think the Blue Lagoon is fine? ....

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوّن جملًا صحيحة.

1. was - a - It - day - sunny - .
....
2. is - Ali - driver - a brave - .
....
3. swimming - like - Dina - Reem - and - both - .
....
4. spoke - well - She - English - .
....

6 Write a paragraph of about (40) words.

اكتب فقرة من (40) كلمة.

Nature trail weekend

Guiding words:
(family - go on - trail - take - friend - swim - Blue Lagoon - see animals - Wadi Degla)

Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.



Lesson (3) THE RED SEA MOUNTAIN TRAIL

Listen and repeat. استمع وردد.


map
خريطة


hiking shoes
حذاء للتمشية الطويلة


scarf
وشاح / كوفيه


sunglasses
نظارة شمسية



blanket
بطانية


hat
قبعة


tent
خيمة


snacks
وجبات خفيفة


water bottle
زجاجة ماء

Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Extra Vocabulary كلمات إضافية

hiking	التنزه (سيرًا على الأقدام)	community	مجتمع
tourism	السياحة	routes	طرق
guide	مرشد	hikers	متنزهون (سيرًا على الأقدام)
fascinating	ساحر / جذّاب / خلاب	preserve(d)	يحفظ

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

How's life?	كيف حالك؟	Guess what..?	خمن ماذا..؟
Bye for now!	إلى اللقاء الآن!	sounds like fun.	يبدو ممتعًا.
tell about	يخبر عن	look after	يعتني بـ

Listen and read the text. استمع و اقرأ النص.

What is the Red Sea Mountain Trail?

ما هو ممشى جبل البحر الأحمر؟



The Red Sea Mountain Trail was the first long-distance hiking trail to open in Egypt. It runs for around 170 kms through the wonderful mountains near Hurghada. It is a community tourism project. It helps the local Maaza people preserve their culture and history. The trail follows ancient trading and hunting routes in the Eastern Desert. The Maaza people used these routes for centuries. They look after the trail carefully and work as guides. They tell the hikers about the geography and history of this wonderful place. They also tell the hikers about their fascinating culture. It takes around ten days to complete the trail.

كان ممشى جبل البحر الأحمر أول متنزه مشى لمسافات طويلة يتم افتتاحه في مصر. يمتد لمسافة حوالي ١٧٠ كم عبر الجبال الرائعة بالقرب من الغردقة. إنه مشروع سياحي مجتمعي. ويساعد شعوب المعازة المحليين في الحفاظ على ثقافتهم وتاريخهم. يتبع الممشى طرق التجارة والصيد القديمة في الصحراء الشرقية . استخدم شعب المعازة هذه الطرق لعدة قرون. إنهم يعتنون بالممشى ويعملون كمرشدين. ويخبرون المتنزهين عن جغرافية وتاريخ هذا المكان الرائع. كما يخبرون المتنزهين أيضًا عن ثقافتهم الرائعة. يستغرق الأمر حوالي عشرة أيام للأنتهاء من الممشى.

Help your child listen and read about The Red Sea Mountain Trail. ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ عن ممشى جبل البحر الأحمر.

Listen to these speakers going on the Red Sea Mountain Trail.

Interviewer : Hi Sherif, What are you taking on the Red Sea Mountain Trail?

أهلًا شريف. ماذا ستأخذ في ممشى جبل البحر الأحمر؟

Sherif : Hi! Well, I want to protect my feet so I'm taking some hiking shoes. I know there are a lot of hills and rocks so I don't want to fall over! I'm also going to take some snacks from home so I don't get hungry.

مرحبًا، حسنًا، أريد أن احمي قدمي لذا ساخذ حذاء التجول. اعرف أن هناك الكثير من التلال والصخور. لذا لا أريد أن أسقط! سوف اخذ أيضًا بعض الوجبات الخفيفة من البيت حتى لا أشعر بالجوع.

Interviewer : Hi Ramy, What are you taking on the Red Sea Mountain Trail?

مرحبًا رامي، ماذا ستأخذ في ممشى جبل البحر الأحمر؟

Ramy : My friend said it gets very hot on the trail in the places where there are no streams, so I'm taking a hat for my head. I'm also going to take a blanket in case I get cold at night.

قال صديقي إن الجو يصبح حارًا جدًا على الممشى في الأماكن التي لا يوجد بها جداول ماء. لذا سوف أرتدي قبعة لرأسي. ساخذ أيضًا بطانية في حال شعرت بالبرد في الليل.

Interviewer : Hi Lama, what are you taking on the Red Sea Mountain Trail?

مرحبًا لاما، ماذا ستأخذين في ممشى جبل البحر الأحمر؟

Lama : Someone told me you can sometimes get sand in your eyes on the Red Sea Mountain Trail, so I'm taking a scarf to protect my head and eyes. The other important thing for me is to take lots of water bottles- I seem to drink more, than other people so I want to be prepared.

اخبرني أحدهم أنه يمكن أحيانًا أن تدخل الرمال في عينك في ممشى جبل البحر الأحمر. لذلك سأرتدي وشاحًا لحماية رأسي وعيني. الشيء الآخر المهم بالنسبة لي هو أن آخذ الكثير من زجاجات الماء يبدو أنني اشربها أكثر من الآخرين لذا أريد أن أكون جاهزًا.

Interviewer : Hi Nesma, what are you taking on the Red Sea Mountain Trail?

مرحبًا نسمة، ماذا ستأخذين في ممشى جبل البحر الأحمر؟

Nesma : I love checking the route so I'm taking a map. And I'm going to take my cool sunglasses, too to protect my eyes. It's going to be such fun!

أحب التحقق من الطريق لذا ساخذ خريطة. سوف أخذ نظارتي الشمسية الجميلة أيضًا لحماية عيني. سيكون الأمر ممتعًا للغاية.

Help your child listen and read about The Red Sea Mountain Trail. ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ عن ممشى جبل البحر الأحمر.

Activities

1 Listen and complete. استمع وأكمل.

1. Sherif is going on the Red Sea Mountain ....
2. He's going to take .... to protect his feet.
3. He's going to take some .... from home.
4. There are a lot of .... and rocks.

2 Read and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d. اقرأ واختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. I get thirsty, so I always take a ....
   a) hat b) sunglasses c) water bottle d) stone
2. He takes .... to protect his eyes.
   a) maps b) sunglasses c) water bottle d) blankets
3. Sara loves checking the route so she is taking a ....
   a) map b) bottle c) scarf d) hat
4. You should take a .... to protect your head and neck.
   a) map b) water bottle c) snack d) scarf
5. I want to protect my feet so I'm taking my hiking ....
   a) shoes b) bottles c) snacks d) sunglasses
6. She gets cold at night so she is going to take a ....
   a) bottle b) scarf c) blanket d) map

3 Reorder the words to make correct sentences. أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوّن جملًا صحيحة.

1. always - take - I - bottle - a - water - .
   ....
2. want - I - my - to - feet - protect - .
   ....
3. the Red Sea - you - are - What - taking - on - Mountain Trail - ?
   ....

4 Read the following text and answer the questions. اقرأ النص التالي وأجب عن الأسئلة.

The Red Sea Mountain Trail was the first long-distance hiking trail to open in Egypt. It runs for around 170 kms through the wonderful mountains near Hurghada. It is a community tourism project. It helps the local Maaza people preserve their culture and history. The trail follows ancient trading and hunting routes in the Eastern Desert.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The underlined word "preserve" means ....
   a) break b) run c) keep d) waste
2. The trail follows ancient trading and hunting routes in the .... Desert.
   a) Eastern b) Northern c) Western d) Southern

B) Answer the following questions.

3. What is the Red Sea Mountain Trail? ....
4. How long is the trail? ....

5 Write a paragraph of about (40) words. اكتب فقرة من (40) كلمة

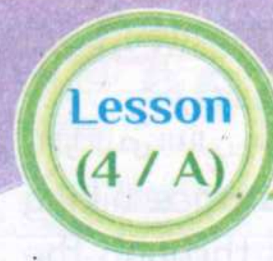
The Red Sea Mountain Trail

Guiding words:
(long - hiking trail - Egypt - 170 kms - wonderful - community tourism project - Maaza people)

....
....
....

6 Punctuate the following. ضع علامات الترقيم على ما يلي.

⇨ who looks after the trail
....



Lesson (4 / A) WORD BUILDING

Noun (n) الاسم

Noun is a word for (things, people, or places).

الاسم هو كلمة تدل على (الأشياء ، الأشخاص أو الأماكن).

e.g. The beauty of the ocean in the sun was incredible.

Adjective (adj) الصفة

Adjective is a word that describes a noun.

الصفة هي كلمة تستخدم لوصف الاسم.

- We can add (ful) to a noun to make an adjective.

من الممكن أن نضيف (ful) للإسم ليكون صفة.

e.g. The Red Sea Mountain Trail is very beautiful.

Adverb (adv) الظرف / الحال

Adverb is word that describes a verb.

الحال / الظرف هو كلمة تستخدم لوصف طريقة حدوث الفعل.

- We can add (fully) to an adjective to make adverb.

من الممكن أن نضيف (fully) للصفة لتكون حال.

e.g. She sang beautifully during the show.

Help your child recognize parts of speech.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على أقسام الكلام.



-Study the following table.

Noun		Adjective	Adverb
wonder	العجب / عجيبة	wonderful	wonderfully
beauty	الجمال	beautiful	beautifully
joy	الفرحة	joyful	joyfully
hope	الأمل	hopeful	hopefully
pain	الألم	painful	painfully
stress	الضغط	stressful	stressfully
care	الرعاية	careful	carefully
thought	الفكر	thoughtful	thoughtfully
meaning	المعنى	meaningful	meaningfully

- Read and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. It was the most .... bird I saw on the trail.
   a) wonder b) wonderful c) wonders d) wonderfully
2. She packed her suitcase for the trip with a lot of ....
   a) care b) careful c) carefully d) worse
3. There is so much natural .... in the Red Sea.
   a) beauty b) beautiful c) beautifully d) more beauty
4. Adam drove the car ....
   a) care b) careful c) carefully d) caring
5. My dad doesn't like working 12-hour days. He says its very ....
   a) stress b) stressful c) stressfully d) stressed
6. The card you gave me was very .... Thank you.
   a) beautiful b) beauty c) beautiful d) beautifully

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.



Lesson (4 / B) PRONUNCIATION

Listen and repeat. استمع وردد


nose


nature

1.000 k.g
ton

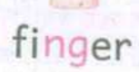
sun



tongue


finger


king



ring

-The sounds /n/ and /ŋ/ sound similar but are pronounced differently.

-الصوتان /n/ , /ŋ/ يبدو أنهما متشابهان لكنهما مختلفان في النطق.

-You make the /n/ sound, as in nose, by blocking the air in your mouth with the front of your tongue.

-نطق الصوت /n/ في كلمة مثل (nose) بحجز الهواء في الفم بمقدمة اللسان.

-You make the /ŋ/ sound, as in sing /siŋ/, by blocking the air with the back of your tongue.

-نطق الصوت /ŋ/ في كلمة مثل (sing) بحجز الهواء في الفم بمؤخرة اللسان.

- Listen and read the poem. استمع واقرأ القصيدة.

1. I can see a king.
2. He's wearing a big ring.
3. He's not looking at the sun.
4. He thinks it weighs a ton.
5. Then the phone rang.
6. And he heard a big bang!




Help your child read and say words with /n/ and /ŋ/ sounds. ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ ويقول الكلمات والأصوات /n/ و /ŋ/ .



MIXED NUMBERS

عدد كسري

Mixed Numbers are numbers which are whole numbers and fractions.

الأعداد الكسرية هي أعداد تتكون من رقم صحيح وكسر.

$4\frac{2}{3}$ $1\frac{1}{4}$ $6\frac{3}{4}$

Adding mixed numbers. جمع الأعداد الكسرية

$3\frac{1}{2} + 4\frac{1}{2} =$ ....

To add these together.

-First: add the whole numbers. -أولاً: اجمع الأرقام الصحيحة.



$3 + 4 = 7$

-Next: add the fractions together. -ثم اجمع الكسور معًا.



$\frac{1}{2} + \frac{1}{2} = \frac{2}{2}$

- The whole number is (7). -الرقم الصحيح هو (٧).
- The total number is (8). -الرقم الإجمالي هو (٨).

Help your child add mixed numbers. ساعد طفلك أن يجمع الأعداد الكسرية.

1 Add the mixed numbers.

أجمع الأعداد الكسرية.

1. $2\frac{4}{5} + 3\frac{1}{5} =$ ....
2. $4\frac{1}{3} + 1\frac{2}{3} =$ ....
3. $1\frac{1}{8} + 2\frac{2}{8} =$ ....
4. $3\frac{2}{6} + 4\frac{3}{6} =$ ....
5. $2\frac{1}{7} + 3\frac{6}{7} =$ ....
6. $6\frac{5}{9} + 3\frac{4}{9} =$ ....

2 Circle the correct answer.

حوط الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. $2\frac{1}{5} + 3\frac{3}{5} =$ .... $5\frac{4}{5}$ or $5\frac{3}{5}$
2. $7\frac{1}{12} + 8\frac{7}{12} =$ .... $16\frac{1}{12}$ or $15\frac{8}{12}$
3. $3\frac{4}{6} + 5\frac{1}{6} =$ .... $8\frac{5}{6}$ or $8\frac{7}{8}$
4. $4\frac{1}{8} + 1\frac{2}{8} =$ .... $5\frac{3}{16}$ or $5\frac{3}{8}$

3 Answer the word problem.

أجب عن المسألة الكلامية.

1. Sara walks for $2\frac{3}{10}$ kms. She stops for a drink and then walks for another $1\frac{4}{10}$ kms. How far has Sara walked in total?

....

2. One nature trail is $3\frac{1}{2}$ kilometers long and another trail is $4\frac{1}{2}$ kilometers long. How long are the nature trails in total?

....

Help your child answer these sums.

ساعد طفلك أن يجيب على هذه المسائل.

Activities

1 Look and complete.

انظر وأكمل.


hiki_ _


to_ _ue


_ose


su_


ri_ _


_atural


fi_ _er


ki_ _

2 Read and match.

اقرأ وصل.

1. It was the most wonderful
2. The king is wearing
3. She sang
4. I can see beautiful

a. beautifully.
b. bird I saw on the trail.
c. a big ring.
d. birds singing.

1-( ) 2-( ) 3-( ) 4-( )

3 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوّن جملًا صحيحة.

1. can - a - I - see - king - .

....

2. hungrily - The - ate - cat - .

....

3. during - beautifully - Sara - sang - show - the - .

....

4. am - very - I - careful - .

....

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

4 Add the mixed numbers. أجمع الأعداد الكسرية.

1. $2\frac{1}{5} + 3\frac{3}{5} =$ ....
2. $1\frac{1}{6} + 1\frac{4}{6} =$ ....
3. $7\frac{1}{12} + 8\frac{7}{12} =$ ....
4. $3\frac{1}{8} + 2\frac{3}{8} =$ ....
5. $4\frac{4}{6} + 5\frac{1}{6} =$ ....
6. $4\frac{1}{8} + 1\frac{2}{8} =$ ....

5 Describe the pictures using. صف الصور مستخدمًا.

(beautifully - quietly - careful - wonderful)

....
....
....
....
....
....






6 Complete the following table. أكمل الجدول الآتي.

Noun	Adjective	Adverb
wonder	....	....
....	beautiful	....
joy	....	....
hope	....	....

Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.



Lessons (5 & 6) - WRITING - PROJECT

Key Vocabulary كلمات رئيسية

free	غير مشغول	sunlight	ضوء الشمس
cactus	صبار (نبات الصبار)	palm tree	نخلة
tamarisk plant	نبات الطرفاء	desert snail	قوقع الصحراء
jerboa	حيوان اليربوع	scientist	عالم / عَالِمَة

Tip!

Phrases to talk about plans: عبارات للتعبير عن الخطط:

Are you free on the weekend? هل أنت متفرغ في عطلة نهاية الأسبوع؟
That sounds like fun. هذا يبدو ممتعًا.
That sounds great. هذا يبدو رائعًا.
Cool! رائع! Awesome! مدهش!

Phrases for making suggestions: عبارات لتقديم الاقتراحات:

How about / What about + v + ing ... ? ماذا عن

- How / What about meeting up?

Let's + inf. الفعل في المصدر

- Let's meet at 3.

Emojis to make the conversation fun: رموز تعبيرية تجعل المحادثة ممتعة

 - a cactus for the desert.

Help your child write a text message.
ساعد طفلك أن يكتب رسالة نصية.

Read the text message conuersation اقرأ محادثة الرسالة النصية.

Hi Malak! Are you free on the weekend?
أهلًا يا ملك! هل أنت متفرغة في عطلة نهاية الأسبوع؟

I'm good, thanks. Sure! What should we do?
أنا بخير، شكرًا. بالتأكيد! ماذا علينا أن نفعل؟

My mom and dad want to do a desert hike. Do you want to come?
أمي وأبي يريدان القيام بنزهة في الصحراء. هل تريدين أن تأتي؟

Yes, that sounds like fun!
نعم، هذا يبدو ممتعًا!

Great, should we pick you up? We don't want to go when it's too hot.
عظيم، هل يجب أن نأتي لنأخذك معنا؟ لا نريد الذهاب عندما يكون الجو شديد الحرارة.

How about me coming to your house?
ماذا عن مجيئي إلى منزلك؟

Good idea! فكرة جيدة!

What should I bring? ماذا يجب أن أحضر؟

Hiking shoes, water, and a sweater.
أحذية التجول، وماء وسترة.

OK! حسنًا!

Great! Let's meet on Friday at 4 pm?
عظيم! دعينا نتقابل يوم الجمعة الساعة 4 مساءً؟

Can't wait! لا يمكنني الانتظار!

Help your child read a text message.
ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ رسالة نصية.



Activities

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False. استمع واكتب (T) صح أو (F) خطأ.

1. Malak and her friend are busy on the weekend. ( )
2. They are going on a waterfall hike. ( )
3. They're going to meet on Friday. ( )
4. They're going to take shoes, water and sweaters. ( )

2 Read and match. اقرأ وصل.

1. Are you free on	a) coming to your house?
2. Let's	b) Hiking shoes and water.
3. How about	c) the weekend?
4. What should I bring?	d) meet at 4 p.m.
	e) can't wait.

1-( ) 2-( ) 3-( ) 4-( )

3 Read and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d. اقرأ واختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. How about .... to the movie tonight?
   a) go b) goes c) went d) going
2. Should we .... you up at 7a.m?
   a) picks b) pick c) picked d) picking
3. That .... like fun.
   a) sounds b) sounds to c) sounding d) sound
4. Do you want .... get a milkshake?
   a) to b) on c) at d) in
5. .... you free on the weekend?
   a) Is b) Does c) Are d) Was

Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

4 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوّن جملًا صحيحة.

1. should - we - What - do - ?
....
2. meet - on - Let's - Friday - .
....
3. about - How - the movies - going - to - ?
....
4. like - sounds - That - fun - .
....

5 Read the following text and answer the questions.

اقرأ النص التالي وأجب عن الأسئلة.

My mom and dad want to do a desert hike. My friend Malak wants to come with us. We don't want to go when it's too hot. Malak is coming to our house. We will meet on Friday at 4 pm. We'll bring hiking shoes, water, and sweaters.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The opposite of the underlined word "hot" is ....
   a) warm b) cold c) sunny d) cloudy
2. My mom and dad want to do a .... hike.
   a) park b) desert c) waterfall d) garden

B) Answer the following questions.

3. What should they bring with them? ....
4. Where will the writer meet her friend? ....

6 Write a paragraph of about (40) words.

اكتب فقرة من (40) كلمة.

A desert hike

Guiding questions:

1- When are you going?
2- Who are you going with?
3- How are you going?
4- What are you going to take?

Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Review on Unit (11)

Vocabulary كلمات

Nature الطبيعة

hill	تل	route	طريق	hiking	التنزه لمسافات طويلة
tree	شجرة	rock	صخرة	hikers	متنزهين لمسافات طويلة
grass	حشائش	stream	جدول ماء	nature trail	التنزه في الطبيعة
leaf	ورقة شجر	plant	نبات	village	قرية
city	مدينة كبيرة	The Red Sea Mountain Trail			ممشى جبل البحر الأحمر

Hiking equipment أدوات التنزه

hiking shoes	حذاء التنزه	snack	وجبة خفيفة	sunglasses	نظارة شمس
blanket	بطانية	tent	خيمة	map	خريطة
water bottle	زجاجة مياه	scarf	وشاح/كوفيه	sweater	سويتر / ستره
hat	قبعة	sunlight	ضوء الشمس	nature	طبيعة

Word building بناء الجملة

Noun (n)	Adjective (adj)	Adverb (adv)	Noun (n)	Adjective (adj)	Adverb (adv)
wonder	wonderful	wonderfully	pain	painful	painfully
beauty	beautiful	beautifully	care	careful	carefully
joy	joyful	joyfully	stress	stressful	stressfully
hope	hopeful	hopefully			

Phonics صوتيات

(n) /ŋ/		(n) /n/	
hiking	king	nose	ton
tongue	ring	know	sun
finger	bang	nature	

Help your child revise unit (11).
ساعد طفلك أن يراجع الوحدة الحادية عشر.

Adjectives الصفات

Usage: :الاستخدام

- **We use adjectives to give more information about nouns.**

نستخدم الصفات لإعطاء مزيد من المعلومات عن الأسماء.

e.g. It was a sunny day.

Adverb الحال / الظرف

Usage: :الاستخدام

- **We use adverbs to give more information about verbs.**

نستخدم الظروف / الأحوال لإعطاء مزيد من المعلومات عن الأفعال.

e.g. She walked slowly.

Regular adverbs الظروف / الأحوال المنتظمة

adjective		adverb	adjective		adverb
happy	سعيد	happily	heavy	ثقيل	heavily
slow	بطئ	slowly	sad	حزين	sadly
quick	سريع	quickly	careful	حريص	carefully
nice	لطيف	nicely	bad	سيئ	badly

Irregular adverbs الأحوال الغير منتظمة

adjective		adverb		adjective		adverb	
fast	سريع	fast	بسرعة	hard	جاد	hard	بجد
good	جيد	well	جيدًا	early	مبكر	early	مبكرًا

Math

Adding mixed numbers. جمع الأعداد الكسرية.

$$3\frac{1}{2} + 4\frac{1}{2} = 8$$

Writing Corner

1 Write a paragraph of about (40) words. اكتب فقرة من (40) كلمة.

"Nature Trail"

Nature trail is a place you go for a hike in nature to see all the plants and animals. I like nature so I always go to nature trails in Egypt. I always go with my friend. We take our water bottles and snacks. To protect our feet we take hiking shoes. We take a scarf to protect our necks. We enjoy our time. We are always happy.

"The Red Sea Mountain Trail"

The Red Sea Mountain Trail was the first long-distance hiking trail to open in Egypt. It runs for around 170 kms through the wonderful mountains near Hurghada. It is a community tourism project. It helps the local Maaza people preserve their culture and history. The trail follows ancient trading and hunting routes in the Eastern Desert. The Maaza people used these routes for centuries. They look after the trail carefully and work as guides.

2 Write an email. اكتب إيميل.

to your friend Ramy telling him about your "Nature trail weekend".

From: Ali
To: Ramy
Subject: Nature trail weekend

Hi Ramy,
How are you?
My family and I want to go on a trail to the Blue Lagoon at Dahab.
Mom said I can take a friend, and I want to take you. Can you come?
We can swim at the Blue Lagoon. What dates do you prefer, 15-16 June or 20-21 June.
Bye for now!
Ali

Dictation on Unit (11)

Lesson (1)

Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning
....	ورقة شجر	....	تل
....	قرية	....	مخزن
....	جدول ماء	....	نبات
....	مدينة	....	حشائش
....	طبيعة	....	شجرة

Lesson (2)

Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning
....	سعيد	....	بسعادة
....	بطئ	....	ببطء
....	سريع	....	بسرعة
....	ثقيل	....	بغزارة / بثقل
....	حزين	....	بحزن
....	جاد	....	بصعوبة
....	جيد	....	بطريقة جيدة
....	حريص	....	بحرص

Lesson (3)

Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning
....	حذاء تنزه	....	وشاح
....	بطانية	....	زجاجة مياه
....	نظارة شمسية	....	قبعة
....	خريطة	....	وجبة خفيفة

Lesson (4)

Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning
....	فرقعة	....	التنزه
....	جمال	....	عناية
....	خاتم	....	حريص
....	ملك	....	أمل

Lessons (5 & 6)

Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning
....	عالم	....	نخلة
....	ضوء الشمس	....	الصبار

Help your child dictate these words.
ساعد طفلك في إملاء هذه الكلمات.

Activities on Unit (11)

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False. استمع واكتب (T) صح أو (F) خطأ.

1. The nature trail trip sounds boring. ( )
2. I like the Blue Lagoon. ( )
3. I can't swim quickly. ( )
4. My friend Dina is brave. ( )

2 Listen and complete. استمع وأكمل.

1. It's very .... on the trail because there are no streams.
2. I'm taking a .... for my head.
3. I'm going to take a .... in case I get cold.
4. At night it is ....

3 Read and match. اقرأ وصل.

1. Reem's mom is going to
2. She drove the car
3. He is a hard worker.
4. I'm taking a hat
5. I can see

a) fast runner.
b) contact Dina's mom.
c) a king.
d) for my head.
e) He works hard.
f) too fast.

1-(   ) 2-(   ) 3-(   ) 4-(   ) 5-(   )

Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

4 Read the following text and answer the questions.

اقرأ النص التالي وأجب عن الأسئلة.

Hello Sara, How are you? I'm having a real adventure here. We arrived on the weekend and set up our tent. It's quite difficult to sleep in a tent on sand. We sit around a fire. It gets really cold here at night. We sing songs and eat delicious food, which we cook on the fire. You can see million stars. It's beautiful. See you next week.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The underlined word "difficult" means ....

a) easy b) simple c) hard d) sad

2. We are having a real .... here.

a) adventure b) park c) race d) feast

B) Answer the following questions.

3. Where does the writer sleep?

....

4. Where do they sit?

....

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوّن جملًا صحيحة.

1. like - A stream - is - river - a - .

....

2. spoke - English - She - well - .

....

3. looks - after - the - Who - trail - ?

....

4. you - Do - want - come - to - ?

....

6 Punctuate the following.

ضع علامات الترقيم على ما يلي.

⇨ who's worried about the heat

....

⇨ i get thirsty when I hike

....

7 Write a paragraph of about (40) words.

اكتب فقرة من (40) كلمة.

"Hiking"

Guiding words:

(enjoy - nature - friends - hiking shoes - blanket - sunglasses - tent)

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Unit 12

Vacations

الإجازات



In this unit the student will ...

في هذه الوحدة الطالب سوف ...

- listen, read, research, and write about vacations.
  يستمع ويقرأ ويبحث ويكتب عن الإجازات.
- think about environmental responsibility.
  يفكر في المسؤلية البيئية.
- learn about natural and man-made resources.
  يتعلم عن الموارد الطبيعية والبشرية.
- practice using prepositions of time.
  يتدرب على استخدام حروف جر الزمان.
- listen to a conversation.
  يستمع إلى محادثة.
- learn about different types of triangles.
  يتعلم عن الأشكال المختلفة للمثلثات.
- read and say words with the /th/ sound.
  يقرأ ويقول كلمات بها صوت (th)
- think about his perfect vacation.
  يفكر في إجازته المثالية.
- write a diary entry for his best day on vacation.
  يكتب مفكرة يومية عن أفضل يوم إجازة.
- write an ad for a vacation destination.
  يكتب إعلان عن مكان لقضاء إجازة.

Lesson (1)

A WORLD TRIP

Listen and say.

استمع وقل.




suitcases حقائب سفر



swimming pool حمام سباحة



airport مطار



theme park ملاهي



bay خليج



ticket تذكرة



hotel فندق



passport جواز سفر

Extra Vocabulary

كلمات إضافية

footprints	آثار أقدام	museum	متحف	India	الهند
business trip	رحلة عمل	Singapore	سنغافورة	high-rise	ارتفاع عالي
vacation	إجازة	camera	كاميرا	boat trip	رحلة بالقارب

Important expressions and prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

on the roof of	على سطح.....	receive... from....	يتلقى .... من .....
on a business trip	في رحلة عمل	busy city	مدينة مزدحمة
fly from	يطير من	take photos	يلتقط صورًا

Help your child identify these words.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Listen and read.

استمع واقرأ.

Where are Uncle Hany and Aunt Nadia now?



Today Mom received an email from her sister Nadia, and her husband Hany. They are on a business trip traveling around the world. Nadia and Hany were in India last week, and this week they are in Singapore. Mom is reading the email aloud to her daughter Rana and her son Ali.

تلقت أمي اليوم رسالة بريد إلكتروني من أختها نادية وزوجها هاني. إنهما في رحلة عمل مسافرون حول العالم. كانت نادية وهاني في الهند الأسبوع الماضي، وهذا الأسبوع هم في سنغافورة. تقرأ أمي الرسالة بصوت عالٍ لابنتها رنا وابنها علي.

From: Nadiax@mail.com

Subject: My trip

To: Samiax@mail.com

Dear Samia,

Hello to you all from Singapore! It's hot here - about 36 degrees. Luckily, we've got a lovely hotel room. We're on the 42nd floor. The view is beautiful and we can see the beach. There's a huge swimming pool on the roof of the hotel! Can you believe it? The flight from India took about six hours, but it was comfortable and we both slept. I didn't take long to get through the airport when we arrived - we got our suitcases straight away.

من: Nadiax@mail.com

إلى: Samiax@mail.com

عزيزتي سامية،

سلامي لكم جميعًا من سنغافورة! الجو حار هنا - حوالي ٣٦ درجة. لحسن الحظ، لدينا غرفة فندق جميلة. نحن في الطابق ٤٢. المنظر جميل ويمكننا رؤية الشاطئ. يوجد حمام سباحة ضخم على سطح الفندق! هل يمكنك تصديق ذلك؟ استغرقت الرحلة الجوية من الهند حوالي ٦ ساعات، ولكنها كانت مريحة وكلًا منا قد نام. لم نستغرق وقتًا طويلًا للخروج من المطار عندما وصلنا. استلمنا حقائبنا على الفور.

Help your child listen and read.

ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ.

Singapore is a wonderful city. There are lots of high-rise buildings, but there are also many parks, gardens, and trees to sit under and relax. The Gardens by the Bay is a really special place where there are flowers and plants from all around the world. We spent a lot of time there. You really forget that you're in the middle of a busy city.

سنغافورة مدينة رائعة. هناك الكثير من المباني الشاهقة، ولكن هناك أيضًا العديد من المتنزهات والحدائق والأشجار للجلوس تحتها والاسترخاء أيضًا. تعتبر الحدائق بجوار الخليج مكانًا مميزًا جدًا حيث توجد فيه زهور ونباتات من جميع أنحاء العالم. لقد قضينا الكثير من الوقت هناك. انت تنسى حقًا أنك في وسط مدينة مزدحمة.

Yesterday, we went on a boat trip with some other tourists to an island. There is a theme park. It was so much fun! After that, we visited the museum of ice cream! I had a 'Queen Bee' ice cream which is vanilla and honey with chocolate. It was great!

بالأمس، ذهبنا في رحلة بالقارب مع بعض السياح الآخرين إلى إحدى الجزر. يوجد ملاهي. كان الأمر ممتعًا جدًا! بعد ذلك، زرنا متحف الآيس كريم! تناولت آيس كريم الملكة النحلة وتتكون من الفانيليا والعسل مع الشوكولاتة. كان رائعًا!

I hope you are all well. We will fly to Japan tomorrow and I'll send you another email when we arrive. Now I have to find our tickets and passports and pack our suitcases again!

Love,

Nadia

أتمنى أن تكونوا جميعًا بصحة جيدة. سوف نسافر إلى اليابان غدًا وسأرسل لكى بريدًا إلكترونيًا آخر عندما نصل. والآن يجب أن أجد تذاكرنا وجوازات سفرنا وأن أحزم حقائبنا مرة أخرى!

حبيبتك،

نادية

Help your child listen and read.

ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ.

Activities

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False. استمع واكتب (T) صح أو (F) خطأ.

1. Today mom received an email from her sister. ( )
2. Nadia and Hany are on a business trip. ( )
3. Nadia and Hany were in Italy last week. ( )
4. Mom is reading the email loudly. ( )

2 Read and match. اقرأ وصل.

1. They are staying	a) a thing you take on vacation.
2. The beach is a place	b) so I can take photos.
3. The passport is	c) at a lovely a hotel.
4. I always take my phone	d) you go on vacation.

1-( ) 2-( ) 3-( ) 4-( )

3 Read and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d. اقرأ واختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. I can't travel abroad without my ....
   a) umbrella b) passport c) book d) magazine
2. I have to pack my ....
   a) passports b) pools c) tickets d) suitcases
3. We can swim in the swimming ....
   a) ball b) pool c) pole d) pill

4. There are .... and plants in the garden.
   a) water b) flowers c) hotels d) tickets
5. Tourists always stay in ....
   a) banks b) parks c) hotels d) beaches
6. In Singapore there a lot of .... buildings.
   a) small b) tiny c) short d) high
7. .... are things you take on vacation.
   a) Museums b) Cameras c) Hotels d) Beaches
8. I received an email .... my son Omar.
   a) at b) by c) from d) for
9. They are .... a business trip traveling around the world.
   a) at b) on c) in d) by

4 Reorder the words to make correct sentences. أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوّن جملًا صحيحة.

1. got - our - We - straight - suitcases - away - .
   ....
2. a - There - is - park - theme - .
   ....
3. you - What - do - vacation - on - do - ?
   ....
4. on - We - last - Friday - went - a boat trip - .
   ....

5 Read the following text and answer the questions.

اقرأ النص التالي وأجب عن الأسئلة.

Singapore is a wonderful city. There are lots of high-rise buildings, but there are also many parks, gardens, and trees to sit under and relax. The Gardens by the Bay is a really special place where there are flowers and plants from all around the world. We spent a lot of time there. You really forget that you're in the middle of a busy city.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The underlined word "high-rise" means ....
   a) short b) small c) big d) tall
2. Singapore is a wonderful ....
   a) country b) town c) village d) city

B) Answer the following questions.

3. Where do the flowers and plants come from?

....

4. Where can you sit to relax in Singapore?

....

6 Write a paragraph of about (40) words.

اكتب فقرة من (40) كلمة.

Guiding question: Your vacation

1. When is your vacation?
2. Where are you going on vacation?
2. What are you going to take on vacation?

....

....

....

Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Lesson (2) CLIL: SCIENCE

Natural resources الموارد الطبيعية



rock
صخرة



sunlight
ضوء الشمس



gold
ذهب

sand
رمال





water
ماء



stone
حجر

Man-made resources موارد من صنع الإنسان



plastic plate
طبق بلاستيك



bicycle
دراجة



clothes
ملابس



bottle
زجاجة



basket
سلة



leather shoes
حذاء جلد



bread
خبز

Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Extra Vocabulary كلمات إضافية

fertile banks	الضفاف الخصبة	reeds	نباتات (البوص)
lucky	محظوظ	rain	مطر

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past
harvest	يحصد	harvested
pack	يعبئ	packed

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past
shine	تشرق	shone
sell	يبيع	sold

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

wake up	يستيقظ	put on	يرتدي - يلبس
boil water for	يغلي ماء لـ	live on	يعيش على
by plane	بالطائرة	swim in	يسبح في
use for	يستخدم لـ	put.. into	يضع .... في......
made from	مصنوع من	sell at	يبيع في

Water sources مصادر الماء

rain	مطر	river	نهر
well	بئر	water pump	مضخة مياه
stream	جدول مائي	tap	حنفية - صنبور
ocean	محيط	ground water	مياه جوفية

Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Resources الموارد

Natural resources: الموارد الطبيعية:

are materials or things we can find in nature. Trees and stone, are examples of natural resources.

هي مواد أو أشياء يمكن أن تجدها في الطبيعة. الأشجار والصخور أمثلة للموارد الطبيعية.

Man-made resources: الموارد البشرية:

are materials or things that humans have made. Plastic bottles and cotton clothes are examples of man-made resources.

هي مواد أو أشياء صنعها الإنسان. الزجاجات البلاستيكية والملابس القطنية هي أمثلة على الموارد البشرية.

Now read about Farouk. Underline the natural resources that he uses. Then circle the man-made resources that he uses.



Farouk is a farmer in Aswan. Every morning, he wakes up and puts on his galabeya and leather shoes. He boils some water for tea and eats some bread and fruit.

Because Farouk lives in Aswan, he knows that the sun will shine most days. He is lucky that he lives on the fertile banks of the Nile so that he can use the water for his crops. Today, Farouk is harvesting the grain, putting it into baskets made from reeds, and taking it to sell at the market.

فاروق مزارع من أسوان. كل صباح يستيقظ ويرتدي الجلابية وحذاءه الجلدي. يقوم بغلي بعض الماء لعمل الشاي ويأكل بعض الخبز والفاكهة.

لأن فاروق يعيش في أسوان، فهو يعلم أن الشمس سوف تسطع في معظم الأيام. إنه محظوظ لأنه يعيش على ضفاف النيل الخصبة مما يتيح له استخدام الماء لمحاصيله.

واليوم يحصد فاروق القمح ويضعها في سلال مصنوعة من البوص ويأخذها لبيعها في السوق.

Help your child learn about natural and man-made resources.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعلم الموارد الطبيعية والبشرية.

Now read about Reem. Underline the natural resources that she uses. Then circle the man-made resources that she uses.



Reem is going on vacation. She is traveling to Canada by plane. Today, she is packing her suitcase. She knows that there is often rain in Canada, so she is taking her umbrella. It can also be cold there, so she is packing a sweater. Reem loves swimming and asked her friend in Canada if there was a place she could swim. Her friend said she didn't live near the sea, but she could swim in a river or a lake if she wanted to.

ريم ذاهبة في إجازة. ستسافر إلى كندا بالطائرة واليوم تحزم حقيبتها وهي تعلم أنه غالبًا ما تمطر في كندا، لذا فسوف تأخذ مظلتها. يمكن أيضًا أن يكون الجو باردًا هناك، لذا سوف تأخذ سترة. تحب ريم السباحة وسألت صديقتها في كندا عما إذا كان هناك مكان يمكنها السباحة فيه. قالت صديقتها إنها لا تعيش بالقرب من البحر، لكن يمكنها السباحة في نهر أو بحيرة إذا أرادت ذلك.

Activities

1 Listen and complete.

استمع وأكمل.

1. Reem is going on ....
2. She is traveling to Canada by ....
3. It is .... in Canada, so she is packing her sweater.
4. She is taking her .... as there is often rain.

Help your child read and follow.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ ويتابع.

2 Read and match.

اقرأ وصل

1. Farouk is	a) at the market.
2. The sun will	b) to Canada by plane.
3. The farmer sells the baskets	c) a farmer in Aswan.
4. She is traveling	d) shine most days.

1- (   ) 2- (   ) 3- (   ) 4- (   )

3 Read and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

اقرأ واختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. .... are natural resources.
   a) Trees b) Bottles c) Bicycles d) Clothes
2. .... is a man-made resource.
   a) Bicycle b) Sand c) Water d) Gold
3. Gold is a .... resources.
   a) man-made b) human c) unnatural d) natural
4. He boils some .... for tea.
   a) oil b) gold c) fruit d) water
5. She is taking her .... There is often rain.
   a) ticket b) passport c) camera d) umbrella
6. The shoes are made of ....
   a) cotton b) leather c) wood d) metal
7. The sun will .... most days.
   a) grow b) shine c) play d) read
8. Farouk is .... the grain.
   a) playing b) harvesting c) reading d) running

4 Read the following text and answer the questions.

اقرأ النص التالي وأجب عن الأسئلة.

Farouk is a farmer in Aswan. Every morning,he wakes up and puts on his galabeya and leather shoes. He boils some water for tea and eats some bread and fruit. Because Farouk lives in Aswan, he knows that the sun will shine most days. He is lucky that he lives on the fertile banks of the Nile so that he can use the water for his crops.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Farouk puts on his ....
   a) T-shirt b) galabeya c) suit d) shirt
2. Bread and fruits are .... foods.
   a) unhealthy b) healthy c) awful d) careful

B). Answer the following questions.

3. What does Farouk do? ....
4. Why do you think Farouk is lucky? ....

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوّن جملًا صحيحة.

1. Aswan - a farmer - He - in - is - .
....
2. the stones - Are - man-made - natural - or - resources - ?
....

6 Write a paragraph of about (40) words.

اكتب فقرة من (40) كلمة

Natural resources

Guiding words:
(materials - nature - trees - sunlight - gold - water)

Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.



Lesson (3) A SPECIAL TRIP

Main Vocabulary كلمات رئيسية

traditional	تقليدي	daytrip	رحلة
stalls	أكشاك	handicrafts	أعمال يدوية
destination	وجهة مقصودة	diary	مذكرة / مفكرة

Extra Vocabulary كلمات إضافية

free time	وقت فراغ	Dead Sea	البحر الميت
citadel	قلعة	leaflet	كتيب - منشور
local	محلي	Roman Amphitheater	المسرح الروماني المدرج
special day	يوم (خاص - مميز)	archaeological	أثري
rug	سجادة صغيرة	desert	صحراء
midnight	منتصف الليل	land	أرض
tour guide	مرشد سياحي	trading center	مركز تجاري

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past
arrive	يصل	arrived
check	يفحص	checked
discover	يكتشف	discovered
wander	يتجول	wandered

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past
find	يجد	found
buy	يشتري	bought
spend	يقضي	spent
drive	يقود (سيارة)	drove

Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

arrive in / at	يصل إلى	check in	يسجل دخول
head out of	يخرج من	float on	يطفو على
drive back to	يقود عائدًا إلى	chance to	فرصة لـ
reach destination	يصل للمكان المقصود	good for	جيد لـ / مفيد لـ
not long now	لم يتبقى وقتًا طويلًا	go shopping	يذهب للتسوق
wander through streets			يتجول في الشوارع

Listen and read the leaflet. استمع واقرأ النشرة

How many museums can you visit on this trip?

DESERT TOURS TRIP TO JORDAN October 4-8



Day 1: Arrive in Amman and check in to our hotel in the middle of the city. Enjoy some free time in the city before meeting at the Memphis restaurant for a traditional Jordanian dinner in the evening.

اليوم الأول: الوصول إلى عمان والتسجيل في فندقنا في وسط المدينة. استمتع ببعض وقت الفراغ في المدينة قبل الالتقاء في مطعم ممفيس لتناول عشاء أردني تقليدي في المساء.

Day 2: Today we enjoy a tour of Amman. Visit the famous Amman Citadel before exploring the Roman Amphitheater and the Archaeological Museum. After a late lunch in a local restaurant, spend the afternoon and evening walking through Amman's many colorful markets.

اليوم الثاني: نستمتع اليوم بجولة في عمان. ونزور قلعة عمان الشهيرة قبل استكشاف المسرح الروماني المدرج والمتحف الأثري بعد تناول وجبة غداء في وقت متأخر في مطعم محلي، وقضينا فترة ما بعد الظهيرة والمساء في التجول في أسواق عمان العديدة الملونة.

Help your child read and follow.
ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ ويتابع.

Day 3: Today we head out of the city for a daytrip to As-Salt. About an hour away from Amman, in the ancient town of As-Salt you will find lots of local Jordanian culture. The markets are wonderful and there are many traditional arts and crafts to buy. We will visit the Abu Jaber Museum and discover the history of As-Salt as Jordan's important trading center.

اليوم الثالث: اليوم اتجهنا خارج المدينة في رحلة نهارية إلى السلط. على بعد حوالي ساعة من عمان، في بلدة السلط القديمة ستجد الكثير من الثقافة الأردنية المحلية. الأسواق رائعة وهناك العديد من الفنون والحرف اليدوية للشراء. سنزور متحف أبو جابر ونكتشف تاريخ السلط كمركز تجاري هام في الأردن.



Day 4: No visit to Jordan is complete without a trip to the Dead Sea. There is so much salt in this sea that you are able to float on the water! You can also enjoy the Dead Sea mud, which is very good for your skin.

اليوم الرابع: لا تكتمل زيارة الأردن بدون رحلة إلى البحر الميت. هناك الكثير جدًا من الملح في هذا البحر حتى أنه يمكنك أن تطفو على الماء! يمكنك أيضًا الاستمتاع بطين البحر الميت، وهو مفيد جدًا لبشرتك.

Day 5: After enjoying a relaxed breakfast, we leave at 11 am to drive three hours back to Amman. We will stop on the way for lunch before arriving at the airport at 5 pm.

اليوم الخامس: بعد الاستمتاع بوجبة فطور مريحة، سنغادر الساعة 11 صباحًا لنعود إلى عمان في رحلة تستغرق ثلاث ساعات. سنتوقف في الطريق لتناول الغداء قبل الوصول إلى المطار الساعة 5 مساءً.

- Read again and decide if the sentences are True (T) or False (F).

1. You visit As-Salt before you visit the Dead Sea.
2. The Abu Jaber Museum is in Jordan's capital city.

3. The Dead Sea mud is bad for your skin.


Help your child read and follow.
ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ ويتابع.

Tip

A diary is a book in which you write down things that happen to you each day. A diary entry is a piece of writing in a diary.

المذكرة عبارة عن كتاب تدون فيه الأشياء التي تحدث لك كل يوم. مدخل المذكرة هو نموذج من الكتابة في مفكرة.

Read and follow. اقرأ وتابع.

Thursday, October 6th

Dear Diary,

Today was the best day ever! I love anything to do with history - I always go to the museum at home, so today was a special day for me. The bus ride wasn't too bad. It only took an hour to reach our destination. I listened to music on the way and the time went quite quickly. When we arrived, we had the chance to wander through the streets and several people bought traditional Jordanian handicrafts from the stalls. I bought a lovely colorful rug. Saleh (our tour guide) was very kind and took it to the bus for me so that I didn't have to carry it around! That was lucky because I spent hours in the museum!

الخميس، ٦ أكتوبر

مذكرتي العزيزة

اليوم كان أفضل يوم على الإطلاق! أنا أحب أي شيء له علاقة بالتاريخ - وأذهب دائمًا إلى المتحف في بلدي، لذلك كان اليوم يومًا مميزًا بالنسبة لي. لم تكن رحلة الحافلة سيئة للغاية. استغرق الأمر ساعة واحدة فقط للوصول إلى وجهتنا. استمعت إلى الموسيقى في الطريق ومر الوقت سريعًا. عندما وصلنا، أتيحت لنا الفرصة للتجول في الشوارع واشترى العديد من الناس المصنوعات اليدوية الأردنية التقليدية من الأكشاك. واشتريت سجادة ملونة جميلة. كان صالح (مرشدنا السياحي) لطيفًا جدًا وأخذها إلى الحافلة من أجلي حتى لا اضطر إلى حملها! كان ذلك من حسن الحظ لأنني قضيت ساعات في المتحف!



Language Focus

Prepositions of Time حروف جر الزمان

in — on — at

in	months	شهور	in	the morning	صباحًا
	seasons	فصول السنة		the afternoon	بعد الظهيرة
	years	سنين		the evening	مساءً

e.g. Grandma was born in 1962. - I go to Alex in summer.
e.g. It was warm in October. - He is active in the morning.
e.g. They arrived in the morning.

on	days of the week	أيام الأسبوع	On Saturday.
	special days	أيام مخصوصة	On my birthday.
	specific dates	تواريخ محددة	On June 26th.

e.g. I go swimming on Mondays.
e.g. I am having a party on my birthday.
e.g. I was born on July 6th 2010.

at	times	الوقت (ساعة)
	night	ليلًا
	lunchtime	وقت الغذاء

e.g. Our flight lands at 8 pm.
e.g. I go to bed at night.
e.g. We play basketball at lunchtime.

Help your child practice using prepositions of time.
ساعد طفلك أن يتدرب على استخدام حروف جر الزمان.

- Read and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

اقرأ واختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. Dad is a baker. He works .... the mornings.
   a) in b) on c) at d) under
2. We go to the club .... Saturday.
   a) in b) on c) above d) at
3. Does our next class start .... 2 pm?
   a) at b) in c) of d) on
4. Grandma was born .... 1962.
   a) in b) on c) at d) under

Listen and read

استمع واقرأ.

Narrator : 1	
Boy 1 :	Hi Ayman, do you want to play basketball after school on Thursday? مرحبًا أيمن، هل ترغب في لعب كرة السلة بعد المدرسة يوم الخميس؟
Ayman :	On Thursday? I'm sorry, I can't, I go swimming on Thursdays. يوم الخميس؟ آسف، لا استطيع، أنا أذهب للسباحة أيام الخميس.
Narrator : 2	
Girl 1 :	Hello Amira, shall we go shopping on the weekend? مرحبًا أميرة، هل سنذهب للتسوق في عطلة نهاية الأسبوع؟
Amira :	Yes please, that sounds good! نعم من فضلك، هذا يبدو جيدًا!

Help your child listen and read. ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ.

Narrator : 3	
Dad :	Fareed, remember you have a dentist's appointment this afternoon. فريد، تذكر أن عندك موعد مع طبيب الأسنان بعد الظهر.
Fareed :	Oh yes, it's at five o'clock, isn't it? أوه، نعم، إنه في الساعة الخامسة، أليس كذلك؟
Dad :	Yes, that's right. نعم، هذا صحيح.
Fareed :	OK, thanks Dad. تمام، شكرًا يا أبي.
Narrator : 4	
Mom :	Talia, our flight leaves at 11 am. تاليا، ستغادر رحلتنا الجوية الساعة 11 صباحًا.
Talia :	Ok Mom, I'll be ready حسنًا يا أمي، سأكون جاهزة.
Narrator : 5	
Sherif :	Mom, remember I'm playing football with Ramy in the morning. أمي، تذكري أنني سألعب كرة القدم مع رامي في الصباح.
Mom :	Oh, yes, that's fine Sherif. Thanks for reminding me. نعم، هذا جيد يا شريف. شكرًا لتذكيري.
Narrator : 6	
Sara :	Mom, when are we visiting Grandma and Grandpa? أمي، متى سنزور الجد والجدة؟
Mom :	We're going in July, Sara. Not long now. سنذهب في شهر يوليو، يا سارة. لم يتبقى وقت طويل الآن.

Help your child listen and read. ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ.

Activities

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False. استمع واكتب (T) صح أو (F) خطأ.

1. No visit to Jordan is complete without a trip to the Dead Sea. ( )
2. There is much salt in the Dead Sea. ( )
3. You can enjoy the Dead Sea mud. ( )
4. The Dead Sea mud is bad for your skin. ( )

2 Read and match. اقرأ وصل.

1. How many museums
2. I would like to visit Zambia
3. I am having a party
4. We are travelling

a. on my birthday.
b. to Canada by plane.
c. because I want to see elephants and lions.
d. can you visit on this trip?

3 Read and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d. اقرأ واختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. .... Monday, we arrived in Amman.
   a) In b) On c) Of d) At
2. The flight landed .... 4 o'clock.
   a) at b) on c) in d) above
3. We visit our cousins .... July.
   a) in b) on c) off d) at
4. Amman is a really busy city .... night.
   a) in b) at c) on d) of
5. They arrived .... the afternoon.
   a) in b) on c) at d) above
6. We go to the restaurant for a .... dinner in the evening.
   a) evening b) traditions c) morning d) traditional

4 Reorder the words to make correct sentences. أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوّن جملًا صحيحة.

1. you - like - What - visit - country - would - to - ?
....
2. would - I - like - to - Zambia - visit - .
....
3. go - We - to - club - the - Saturdays - on - .
....

5 Read the following text and answer the questions. اقرأ النص التالي وأجب عن الأسئلة.

Today we head out of the city for a day trip to As-Salt. About an hour away from Amman. In the ancient town of As-Salt, you will find lots of local Jordanian culture. The markets are wonderful and there are many traditional arts and crafts to buy. We will visit the Abu Jaber Museum and discover the history of As-Salt as Jordan's important trading center.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The opposite of the underlined word "ancient" is ....
   a) good b) bad c) modern d) old
2. As-Salt is about a/an .... away from Amman.
   a) hour b) day c) month d) year

B) Answer the following questions.

3. What will you find in the markets? ....
4. What will you discover there? ....

6 Write a paragraph of about (40) words. اكتب فقرة من (40) كلمة.

A trip to Jordan

Guiding words:
(best - special day - bus - wander - bought - handicrafts - tour guide - museum)

Lesson (4) AL-AZHAR PARK

Vocabulary كلمات

go on vacation	يذهب في إجازة	picnic	نزهة / وجبة في الهواء الطلق
ill	مريض	awesome	مدهش / رائع
a show	عرض	bench	مقعد
Al-Azhar Park	حديقة الأزهر	possible	ممكن

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال



Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past
shout	يصرخ	shouted
agree	يوافق	agreed
seem	يبدو	seemed

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past
go	يذهب	went
sit	يجلس	sat
feel	يشعر	felt

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

school was over	انتهت الدراسة	at the beach	عند الشاطئ
at the end of...	في نهاية.....	a group of...	مجموعة من...
stay at	يمكث في	have a meal	يتناول وجبة
feel a bit low	يشعر بمزاج سئ	make a picnic	يعد وجبة

Help your child identify these words.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Listen and read استمع واقرأ.

Why did Seleem feel better at the end of the story?



Seleem was feeling sad. It was a hot summer, school was over and he wanted to go on vacation. His cousin Sherif was away at the beach and Seleem wanted to be there too. His family usually went on vacation with Sherif's family, but this year that wasn't possible - Seleem's dad had a new job and they had to stay in Cairo.

كان سليم يشعر بالحزن. كان صيفًا حارًا، وانتهت الدراسة وأراد سليم أن يذهب في إجازة. فكان ابن عمه شريف مسافرًا عند الشاطئ وأراد سليم أن يكون هناك أيضًا. عادة ما كانت عائلته تذهب في إجازة مع عائلة شريف، لكن هذا العام لم يكن ذلك ممكنًا - والد سليم حظى بوظيفة جديدة واضطروا للبقاء في القاهرة.

Marwan, his friend, phoned him, "Hey, how are you, Seleem?", "I'm feeling a bit low - I want to be at the beach," said Seleem.

اتصل به صديقه مروان قائلًا: "مرحبًا، كيف حالك يا سليم؟" قال سليم: "أشعر بمزاج سيء قليلًا. أريد أن أكون على الشاطئ."

"Well, this year you can't go, so let's find something else to do!" said Marwan. "I know, let's go to Al-Azhar Park."

"حسنًا، هذا العام لا يمكنك الذهاب إليه، لذا دعنا نجد شيئًا آخر لنفعله! أنا أعرف، هيّا نذهب إلى حديقة الأزهر."

"Hmm," said Seleem. "I don't know it, but it sounds interesting!"

قال سليم: "همم، لا أعرف، ولكن يبدو ذلك مثيرًا للاهتمام!"

Help your child listen and read.

ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ.

Seleem's mom agreed to take them to the park. She made a picnic, so when they arrived, they sat under a big tree on the cool green grass and enjoyed their food. It was such a beautiful day, and Marwan and Seleem played football. Suddenly Ramy and Maged, their friends from school, came running past.

وافقت والدة سليم أن تأخذهم إلى الحديقة. قامت بإعداد وجبة، لذا عندما وصلوا، جلسوا تحت شجرة كبيرة على العشب الأخضر الجميل واستمتعوا بطعامهم. كان يومًا جميلًا، ولعب مروان وسليم كرة القدم. وفجأة جاء رامي وماجد، أصدقاؤهما من المدرسة، راكضين.

"Hi Ramy!" shouted Seleem. "Why are you in the city? I thought you were at the beach!"

صاح سليم: "مرحبًا رامي!" لماذا أنت في المدينة؟ اعتقدت أنك كنت عند الشاطئ!"

"No," said Ramy. "My grandma's ill so Mom wanted to stay in Cairo. There's a whole group of us who stayed at home and didn't travel. Can you come to the playground with us?" Seleem asked his mom and they all went together to the playground. Mom sat on a bench and enjoyed all the beautiful plants and birds in the park.

قال رامي: "لا، جدتي مريضة لذا أرادت أمي البقاء في القاهرة. هناك مجموعة كاملة منا بقيت في البيت ولم تسافر. هل يمكنك أن تأتي إلى الملعب معنا؟" استأذن سليم من أمه وذهبوا جميعًا معًا إلى الملعب. جلست الأم على مقعد واستمتعت بكل النباتات والطيور الجميلة في الحديقة.

"I think this is a fantastic place," said Mom at the end of the afternoon. "I can see there's a show next week. Let's come back with Dad, see the show, and have a meal at the restaurant." Seleem felt very happy - now he knew his friends were in town and they had a wonderful park. It seemed that summer in the city would be awesome!

قالت أمي في نهاية فترة ما بعد الظهيرة: "أعتقد أن هذا مكان رائع. أستطيع أن أرى أن هناك عرضًا الأسبوع المقبل. دعنا نعود مع أبيك ونرى العرض، ونتناول وجبة في المطعم. شعر سليم بسعادة كبيرة. الآن عرف أن أصدقاءه في المدينة وبها حديقة رائعة. يبدو أن الصيف في المدينة سيكون رائعًا.

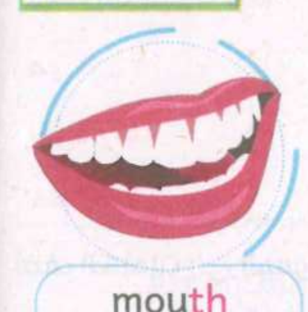
Help your child listen and read.

ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ

PRONUNCIATION

Listen and repeat. استمع وردِّد.

(th) /θ/



mouth
فم

south
جنوب



birthday
يوم ميلاد



Earth
كوكب الأرض

- To make the /θ/ sound, press your tongue against your top teeth.
  لنطق الصوت /θ/ نضغط باللسان على الاسنان العليا.
- It is unvoiced, which means you should feel some air on your hand when you say it.
  وهو صوت غير جهري، وهذا يعني أنه يجب الشعور بهواء في اليد عند نطقه.

(th) /ð/



mother
الأم



father
الأب



leather
جلد



bathroom
الحمام

- To make the /ð/ sound, press your tongue against your top teeth.
  لنطق الصوت /ð/ نضغط باللسان على الاسنان العليا.
- There's no air, but you can feel a vibration on your neck.
  لا تخرج في نطقه هواء ولكن تشعر باهتزاز في الرقبة.

Help your child read and say words with the (th) sound.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ ويقول كلمات بها الصوت (th).

Extra Vocabulary كلمات إضافية

th /θ/		th /ð/	
thing	شيء	this	هذا (للمفرد القريب)
think	يفكر	these	هؤلاء (للجميع القريب)
author	مؤلف	those	أولئك (للجميع البعيد)
Earth	أرض	other	أخرى / آخر
thousand	ألف (١٠٠٠)	with	مع
three	ثلاثة	they	هم

Add these words to the correct column. أضف الكلمات إلى العمود الصحيح.

(mouth - other - bathroom - Earth - father - with)

/θ/	/ð/

Suffix اللاحقة

Suffix is a letter or group of letters added to the end of a word to make another word.

اللاحقة هي حرف أو مجموعة حروف تضاف إلى نهاية كلمة لتكوّن كلمة أخرى.

-ous	dangerous	خطير	-ive	creative	مبدع
	famous	مشهور		expensive	غالي الثمن
	enormous	ضخم		active	نشيط

Listen and repeat. استمع وردّد.

- Be careful! That snake is poisonous.
- Ali swims and runs. He's very active.
- Everyone knows Soha. She is very famous.
- His watch is very expensive.

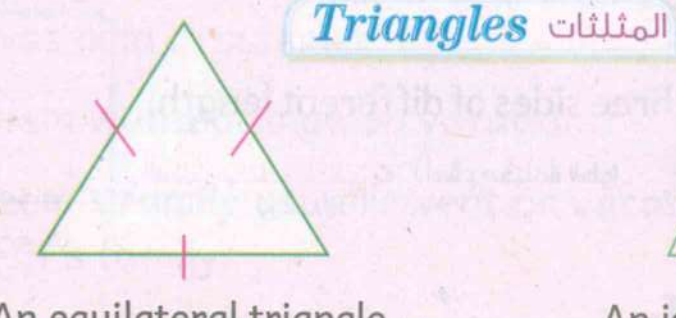
Help your child recognize the adjective suffixes.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على لاحقات تكون صفات.

MATH

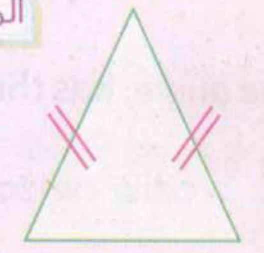
A triangle: is a 2D shape with three sides.

المثلث: هو شكل ثنائي الأبعاد بثلاث أضلاع.

Triangles المثلثات



An equilateral triangle
مثلث متساوي الأضلاع



An isosceles triangle
مثلث متساوي الساقين



A right angle triangle
مثلث قائم الزاوية



A scalene triangle
مثلث مختلف الأضلاع

An equilateral triangle: has three equal sides.

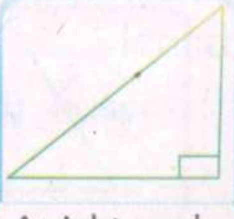
المثلث متساوي الأضلاع: له ٣ أضلاع متساوية.



An equilateral

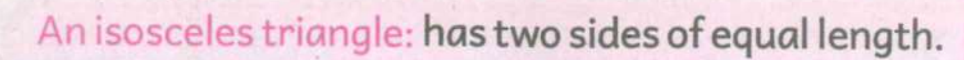
A right angle triangle: has one angle that measures (90°).

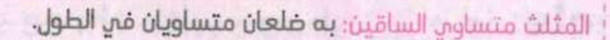
المثلث قائم الزاوية: به زاوية قياسها (٩٠°).

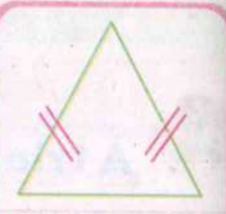


A right angle

Help your child learn about different types of triangles.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على أنواع المثلثات المختلفة.

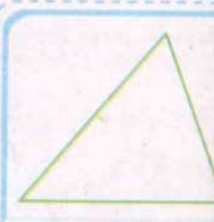

An isosceles triangle: has two sides of equal length.


المثلث متساوي الساقين: به ضلعان متساويان في الطول


An isosceles

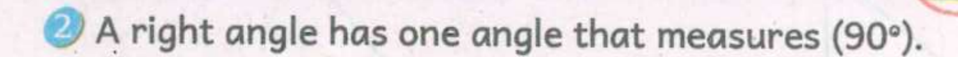
A scalene angle: has three sides of different length.

المثلث مختلف الأضلاع: به ٣ أضلاع مختلفة الطول.

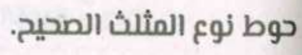

A scalene

1 Read and number. اقرأ ورقم.

1. An equilateral has three equal sides.

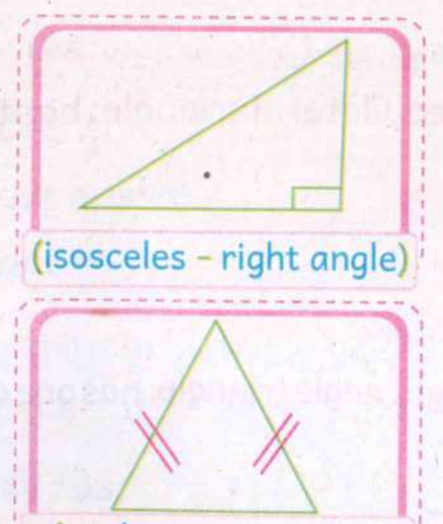


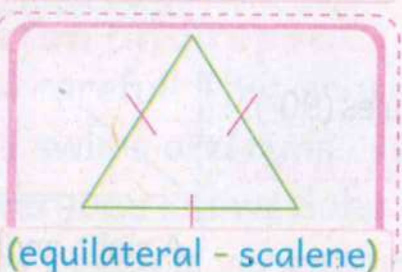
2. A right angle has one angle that measures (90°).
3. An isosceles has two sides of equal length.
4. A scalene triangle has three sides of different length.

2 Circle the correct triangle type. حوط نوع المثلث الصحيح.


(scalene - right angle)


(isosceles - right angle)


(equilateral - scalene)

(scalene - isosceles)

Help your child learn about different types of triangles.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على أنواع المثلثات المختلفة.

Activities

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False. استمع واكتب (T) صح أو (F) خطأ.

1. Seleem was feeling happy. ( )
2. It was cold in summer. ( )
3. Seleem wanted to go on vacation. ( )
4. Seleem's family usually went on vacation with Sherif's family. ( )



2 Read and match. اقرأ وصل.

1. He wasn't at school because	a. is poisonous.
2. Be careful! That snake	b. very expensive.
3. Everyone knows her.	c. She is very famous.
4. Ali's watch is	d. he was on vacation.

3 Read and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

اقرأ واختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. An equilateral triangle has .... equal sides.
   a) 2 b) 3 c) 4 d) 5
2. A right angle triangle has 1 angle that measures .... degrees.
   a) 80° b) 70° c) 90° d) 60°
3. An isosceles triangle has two sides of .... length.
   a) different b) equal c) simple d) easy
4. Everyone knows Soha, she is ....
   a) fame b) famous c) shame d) side

Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

4 Read the following text and answer the questions.

اقرأ النص التالي وأجب عن الأسئلة.

Seleem was feeling sad. He wanted to go on vacation. But Seleem's dad had a new job and they had to stay in Cairo. His friend Marwan suggested going to Al-Azhar Park. Seleem's mother took them to the park. She made a picnic. They sat under the tree and had their food.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. At first, Seleem was feeling ....
   a) happy b) sad c) delighted d) pleased
2. They had their food under the ....
   a) restaurant b) hotel c) grass d) tree

B) Answer the following questions.

3. Who had a new job? ....
4. Where did Marwan suggest going to? ....

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوّن جملًا صحيحة.

1. are - you - Why - the - in - city - ?

....

2. watch - His - expensive - is - very - .

....

3. has - An equilateral - equal - three - sides - triangle - .

....

6 Write a paragraph of about (40) words.

اكتب فقرة من (40) كلمة.

Al-Azhar Park

Guiding words:
(place - vacation - fantastic - picnic - football - plants - birds - awesome - Cairo)

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Lessons (5&6) -Writing - Project

Vocabulary المفردات

sights	مناظر خلابة	metal	معدن
garden	حديقة	market place	مكان التسوق
Marrakech	مراكش (المغرب)	Eiffel Tower	برج إيفل
snorkelling	الغطس بأنبوب تنفس	brightly-colored	زاهية الألوان
race	سباق	sand dunes	كثبان رملية
beach buggies	عربات الشاطئ	Louver Museum	متحف اللوفر

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Present		Past	Present		Past
remind	يُذكّر	reminded	understand	يفهم	understood
make	يصنع	made	keep up	يلاحق	kept up

Read the diary entries

اقرأ المفكرات اليومية.

Reem

Dear Diary, July 21st

I had such a cool day today. I went on the river. We saw some famous sights from the boat, like the Louvre, a beautiful museum with fantastic paintings, and the Eiffel Tower.

The Eiffel Tower is really tall and made of metal. I tried to speak French, but I couldn't really say anything. But the French people were very kind and when I spoke English, they understood me! At the end of the day we went to a French restaurant and had a wonderful meal with potatoes. It was a special day.

مفكرتي العزيزة،

لقد قضيت يومًا رائعًا اليوم. ذهبت إلى النهر. شاهدنا بعض المعالم السياحية الشهيرة من القارب، مثل متحف اللوفر، وهو متحف جميل به لوحات رائعة، وبرج إيفل. برج إيفل طويل جدًا ومصنوع من المعدن. حاولت التحدث باللغة الفرنسية، ولكن لم أستطع حقًا قول أي شيء. لكن الفرنسيين كانوا طيبين جدًا وعندما تحدثت بالإنجليزية فهموني! في نهاية اليوم ذهبنا إلى مطعم فرنسي وتناولنا وجبة رائعة مع البطاطس. لقد كان يومًا مميزًا.

Help your child read the diary entries.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ المفكرات اليومية.

Amira

April 5th

Dear Diary,
I love this city! There's so much to do. Today we went to Ali Ben Youssef Madrasa, a beautiful museum that is 800 years old! We went early in the morning, but it was still very busy with people. We also visited Jardin Majorelle, a lovely garden where we had a picnic. Ilike it there because it reminds me a bit of Al-Azhar Park at home. But my favorite place is Jemaa el-Fnaa, the market place. The smells coming from the market stalls make me hungry! I had a sandwich yesterday. I can't wait to go back there tomorrow!

مفكرتي العزيزة،
أنا أحب المدينة! هناك الكثير للقيام به. ذهبنا اليوم إلى مدرسة علي بن يوسف، وهي متحف جميل عمره 800 عام! ذهبنا في الصباح الباكر، لكنه كان لا يزال مزدحمًا جدًا بالناس. وزرنا أيضًا حديقة ماجوريل، وهي حديقة جميلة حيث قمنا بنزهة فيها. يعجبني المكان هناك لأنه يذكرني قليلاً بحديقة الأزهر في الوطن. لكن المكان المفضل لدي هو جامع الفناء، وهو السوق. الروائح القادمة من أكشاك السوق تجعلني أشعر بالجوع! تناولت ساندوتشًا بالأمس. لا أطيق الانتظار للعودة إلى هناك غدًا!

Note:

When you write a diary remember to: عندما تكتب مفكرة، تذكر أن:

1. Write the date. اكتب التاريخ.
2. Start with "Dear Diary". تبدأ بـ "مفكرتي العزيزة".
3. Describe the places / events. صف الأماكن والأحداث.
4. Say how you feel. تقول ما تشعر به.

Help your child read the diary entries.
ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ المفكرات اليومية.

Do you want to go on this vacation?

My perfect vacation

عطلتي المثالية

Day 1



In the morning, we go to the beach to go snorkeling. Swim with the turtles and brightly-colored fish! The afternoon can be spent on the beach with a picnic and a good book.

اليوم الأول: في الصباح نذهب إلى الشاطئ للغطس. نسبح مع السلاحف والأسماك ذات الألوان الزاهية! يمكن قضاء فترة ما بعد الظهر على الشاطئ مع وجبة في الهواء الطلق وكتاب جيد.

Day 2



Today we race through the sand dunes in beach buggies! It's fun and fast! Can you keep up?

اليوم الثاني: اليوم نتسابق عبر الكثبان الرملية في عربات الشاطئ! إنها ممتعة وسريعة! هل يمكنك اللحاق بنا؟

Day 3



Spend a relaxed day shopping and wandering through the markets. Perhaps buy some traditional handicrafts to take home.

اليوم الثالث: أقضي يوم استرخاء في التسوق والتجول في الأسواق. ربما نشتري بعض المصنوعات اليدوية التقليدية لنأخذها عند العودة إلى الوطن.

Day 4



Learn about the city's cultural past with a trip to the museum today. In the evening, we go to a traditional restaurant where you can see the chef making the local dishes.

اليوم الرابع: نتعرف على الماضي الثقافي للمدينة برحلة إلى المتحف اليوم.
في المساء، نذهب إلى مطعم تقليدي حيث يمكنك رؤية الشيف وهو يعد الأطباق المحلية.

Help your child identify how to write an ad for a vacation destination.
ساعد طفلك أن يكتب إعلانًا لمكان إجازة.

Activities

1 Listen and complete. استمع وأكمل.

1. In the morning, we go to the .... to go snorkelling.
2. .... with the turtles and brightly-colored fish.
3. The .... can be spent on the beach with a picnic.
4. Today we .... through the sand dunes in beach buggies.

2 Read and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d. اقرأ واختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. .... the morning, we go to the beach to go snorkeling.
   a) In b) On c) At d) Of
2. You can see the .... making the local dishes.
   a) teacher b) chef c) vet d) tourist
3. The Eiffel Tower is made of ....
   a) glass b) metal c) wood d) plastic
4. Marrakech is a/an .... city.
   a) bad b) awful c) busy d) sad

3 Reorder the words to make correct sentences. أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكون جملًا صحيحة.

1. love - I - this - city - .
....
2. saw - famous - We - sights - some - .
....
3. you - Do - go - to - want - vacation - this - on - ?
....
4. 's - fast - It - fun - and - .
....

4 Read the following text and answer the questions. اقرأ النص التالي وأجب عن الأسئلة.

I had such a cool day today. I went on the river. We saw some famous sights from the boat, like the Louvre, a beautiful museum with fantastic paintings, and the Eiffel Tower. The Eiffel Tower is really tall. It is made of metal. I tried to speak French, but I couldn't really say anything. But the French people were very kind and when I spoke English, they understood me. At the end of the day, we went to a French restaurant and had a wonderful meal with potatoes. It was a special day.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The underlined pronoun "It" refers to the ....
   a) Morocco b) pyramid c) Eiffel Tower d) Cairo Tower
2. We saw some famous sights from the ....
   a) boat b) car c) bus d) plane

B) Answer the following questions.

3. What is the Eiffel Tower made of?
....
4. Where did you have a meal with potatoes?
....

5 Write a diary entries about. اكتب مفكرة يومية عن.

"A special day on vacation"

Guiding questions:

- When was it?
- What did you see?
- Where did you go?
- What did you do?

Review on Unit (12)

Vocabulary كلمات

Travel السفر

hotel	فندق	camera	كاميرا	swimming pool	حمام سباحة
ticket	تذكرة	passport	جواز سفر	the theme park	ملاهي
city	مدينة كبيرة	museum	متحف	sunglasses	نظارة شمسية
beach	شاطئ	tourist	سائح	suitcase	حقيبة سفر

Resources الموارد

Natural	طبيعة	man-made	من صنع الانسان
stones	حجارة	plastic	بلاستيك
sunlight	ضوء الشمس	galabeya	جلابية
gold	ذهب	leather	جلد
sand	رمل	bread	خبز
fruit	فاكهة	bottle	زجاجة
reeds	قصب / بوص	basket	سلة

Other words كلمات أخرى

desert	صحراء	land	يهبط / اليابسة
materials	مواد خام	nutrients	عناصر غذائية
traditional	تقليدي	daytrip	رحلة اليوم الواحد
wander	يتجول	handicrafts	حِرَف يدوية
stall	كشك	bench	مقعد

Help your child revise unit (12).
ساعد طفلك أن يراجع الوحدة الثانية عشر.

Phonics صوتيات

(th) /θ/				(th) /ð/			
mouth	فم	thing	شئ	father	أب	they	هم
south	جنوب	Thursday	الخميس	mother	أم	this	هذا للقريب
birthday	عيد ميلاد	think	يفكر	leather	جلد	these	هؤلاء للقريب
bathroom	حمام	three	ثلاثة	brother	أخ	those	هؤلاء للبعيد
Earth	الأرض			other	آخر	with	مع

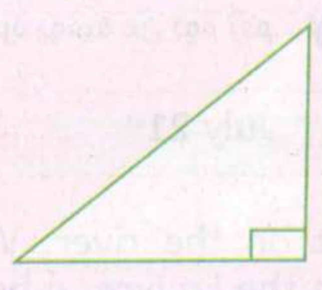
Math

Triangles المثلثات

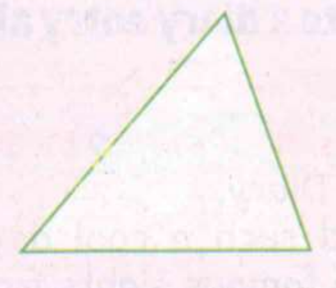


An equilateral triangle
مثلث متساوي الأضلاع

An isosceles triangle
مثلث متساوي الساقين



A right angle triangle
مثلث قائم الزاوية



A scalene triangle
مثلث مختلف الأضلاع

- I go swimming **on Mondays**.
- We play basketball **at lunchtime**.
- We visit our cousins **in June**.

Help your child revise unit (12).
ساعد طفلك أن يراجع الوحدة الثانية عشر.

Writing Corner

1 Write a paragraph of about (40) words. اكتب فقرة من (40) كلمة.

"A trip"

Last summer, I went to a trip, I went with my family. We went to Singapore. We had got a lovely hotel room. The view was beautiful and we could see the beach. Singapore is a wonderful city. There are lots of high-rise buildings, but there are also many parks, gardens, and trees to sit under and relax. The Bay is a really special place. It was great.

"Al-Azhar Park"

Al-Azhar Park is in Cairo. I went on vacation to Al-Azhar Park. Our mom made a picnic, so we sat under a big tree on the cool grass and enjoyed our food. It was such a beautiful day. We played football. Mom sat on a bench and enjoyed all the beautiful plants and birds in the park. I think this is a fantastic place.

2 Write a diary entry about Reem's day. اكتب مفكرة يومية عن يوم ريم.

Reem

July 21st

Dear Diary,
I had such a cool day today. I went on the river. We saw some famous sights from the boat, like the Louvre, a beautiful museum with fantastic paintings, and the Eiffel Tower. The Eiffel Tower is really tall and made of metal. I tried to speak French, but I couldn't really say anything. But the French people were very kind and when I spoke English, they understood me! At the end of the day we went to a French restaurant and had a wonderful meal with potatoes. It was a special day.

Help your child write paragraphs.
ساعد طفلك أن يكتب فقرات.

Dictation on Unit (12)

Lesson (1)

Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning
....	شاطئ	....	كاميرا
....	مدينة كبيرة	....	جواز سفر
....	فندق	....	نظارة شمس
....	متحف	....	تذكرة
....	حمام سباحة	....	حقيبة

Lesson (2)

Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning
....	موارد من صنع الانسان	....	موارد طبيعية
....	ملابس	....	أشجار
....	دراجة	....	حجارة
....	بلاستيك	....	شمس

Lesson (3)

Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning
....	رحلة يوم	....	تقليدي
....	مصنوعات يدوية	....	يتجول
....	مرشد سياحي	....	جولة سياحية

Lesson (4)

Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning
....	مقعد	....	إجازة
....	نزهة	....	ممكن
....	جميل	....	يوم ميلاد

Lessons (5 & 6)

Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning
....	مناظر	....	مزدحم
....	معدن	....	سباق
....	طباخ	....	عربات الشاطئ

Help your child dictate these words.
ساعد طفلك في إملاء هذه الكلمات.

Activities on Unit (12)

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False. استمع واكتب (T) صح أو (F) خطأ.

1. Farouk is a vet. ( )
2. He lives in Aswan. ( )
3. The sun doesn't shine in Aswan. ( )
4. The banks of the Nile are fertile. ( )

2 Listen and complete. استمع وأكمل.

1. Today we head out of the city for a ....
2. As-Salt is about an hour from ....
3. The markets are full of traditional arts and .... to buy.
4. We will visit the Abu Jaber ....

3 Read and match. اقرأ وصل.

1. You need a passport	a. three sides of different length.
2. Is your birthday	b. in the park.
3. An equilateral triangle	c. to travel to a different country.
4. They ate on the grass	d. has three equal sides.
	e. on Friday?

1-( ) 2-( ) 3-( ) 4-( )

Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

4 Read the following text and answer the questions. اقرأ النص التالي وأجب عن الأسئلة.

On Monday, we arrived in Amman. The flight landed at 4 o'clock in the afternoon. It was about 26 degrees and I was surprised that it was so warm in October. We went to our hotel and checked in. Our room was very comfortable. Later that evening, we had dinner at the Memphis restaurant in the city center. Amman is a really busy city at night. We walked around the markets and bought some traditional handicrafts. We went back to our hotel at about midnight.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. On ...., we arrived in Amman.
   a) weekend b) Monday c) Tuesday d) Sunday
2. Amman is really a .... city at night.
   a) free b) busy c) not crowded d) ugly

B) Answer the following questions.

3. What do you think of the weather in Amman?
....
4. Where did the writer have dinner?
....

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences. أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوّن جملًا صحيحة.

1. birthday - Reem's - December - on - is - 5th - .
....
2. last - visit - Did - Al-Azhar Park - night - you - ?
....

Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

3 is - She - on - going - vacation - .

....

4 country - like - What - visit - to - would - you - ?

....

6 Punctuate the following. ضع علامات الترقيم على ما يلي.

⇨ farouk is a farmer in aswan.

....

⇨ how many museums can you visit on this trip

....

7 Write a paragraph of about (40) words. اكتب فقرة من (40) كلمة.

"Water sources"

Guiding words:

(rain - river - lake - water pump - stream - ocean)

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Activities on Units (10 - 12)

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False. استمع واكتب (T) صح أو (F) خطأ.

1 We arrived in Alexandria on Friday.

2 We visited some museums and the theatre.

3 The city was very busy.

4 We had a boring tour.

2 Listen and complete. استمع وأكمل.

1 I pack good .... and a sun hat.

2 We have .... for many hours every day.

3 There are unusual .... and trees to see.

4 I saw a .... and a wild cat.

3 Read and match. اقرأ وصل.

1 Don't make noise
2 I will send you another email
3 My brother usually
4 Tourists like to wander
5 Mom and dad

a when I arrive in London.
b does his homework carefully.
c inside the school library.
d through the streets of Khan Al-Khalili.
e went on a desert hike.
f we had a boring tour.

1-( ) 2-( ) 3-( ) 4-( ) 5-( )

Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

4 Read the following text and answer the questions.
اقرأ النص التالي وأجب عن الأسئلة.

When I was on vacation, I went to a camp where boys and girls look at the stars. At the campsite a boy named Jason was setting up his tent. I asked him what he was learning about the stars. He said "I'm learning their names and how to read a star map. The best time to look at the stars is late at night, when it's clear and not cloudy.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Jason went to the .... on vacation.
   a) library b) camp c) museum d) school
2. Jason was setting .... his tent.
   a) in b) on c) up d) under

B) Answer the following questions.

3. What was Jason doing at the campsite?

....

4. When is the best time to see the stars?

....

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.
أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوّن جملًا صحيحة.

1. mustn't - You - park - places - wrong - in - .

....

2. fast - you - Can - swim - ?

....

3. flew - We - to - on - Alexandria - Monday - .

....

4. you - want - Do - vacation - go - to - on - ?

....

6 Punctuate the following.
ضع علامات الترقيم على ما يلي.

⇨ we shouldn't read other people's diaries

....

⇨ what can you do there

....

7 Write a paragraph of about (40) words.
اكتب فقرة من (40) كلمة.

"Sharm El-Sheikh"

Guiding questions:

1- Where is it?
2- What can you do there?
3- Why do tourists like it?
4- Why do you like it?

....

....

....

....

....

....

....



A FANTASTIC FAMILY ADVENTURE

مغامرة عائلية رائعة



BY NICOLA GARDNER
ILLUSTRATED BY NATHALIE ORTEGA



The Story — A FANTASTIC FAMILY ADVENTURE

The Characters

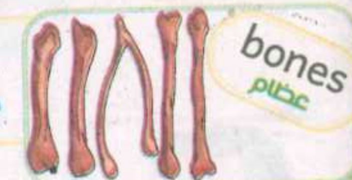


Help your child identify the characters of the story.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على شخصيات القصة.

Picture Dictionary القاموس المصور



Dinosaurs were very big animals which lived millions of years ago.
كانت الديناصورات حيوانات ضخمة جدًا والتي عاشت منذ ملايين السنين.



Our body has many bones to help us stand up.
جسمنا به عظام كثيرة لتساعدنا على الوقوف.



Fish and other animals have a skeleton made of bones inside their bodies.
الأسماك والحيوانات الأخرى لها هيكل يتكون من العظام داخل أجسامهم.



Animals' feet leave tracks on the ground where they walked.
تترك أقدام الحيوانات آثارًا على الأرض حيث مشت.



She likes looking at things in the distance with her binoculars.
إنها تحب النظر إلى الأشياء من على بعد بواسطة منظارها.



An ibex is a type of desert animals like a gazelle.
الوعل هو أحد أنواع الحيوانات الصحراوية مثل الغزال.



An archaeologist is someone who digs underground to find objects from many years ago and studies them.
عالم الآثار هو الشخص الذي يحفر تحت الأرض ليعثر على أشياء منذ سنين عديدة ويدرسها.



An archaeological dig is when people work together to find something under the ground.
الحفر الأثري عندما يعمل الناس سويًا للعثور على شيء ما تحت الأرض.

Help your child read and follow the events of the story.
ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ و يتابع أحداث القصة.

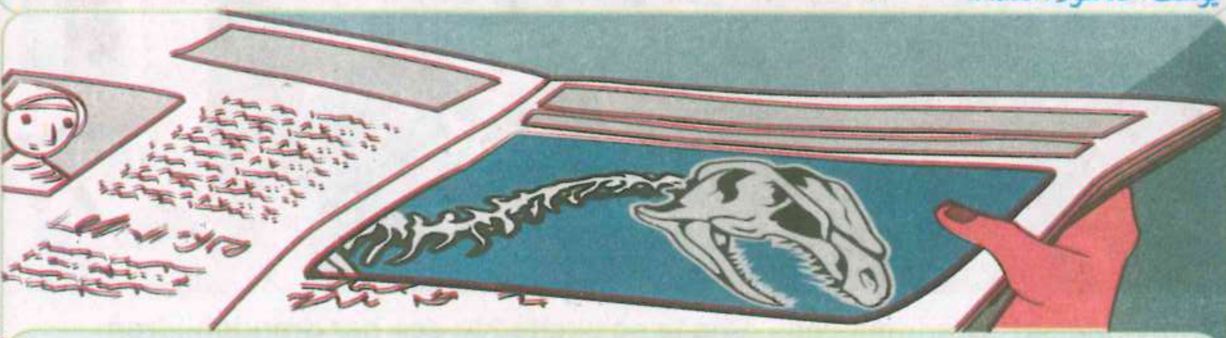


The skeleton of a dinosaur
الهيكل العظمي لديناصور



Ramy and Malak are playing in the yard. Suddenly Dad calls them from the house. "Hey kids,come and see this story in the newspaper!"
The children run inside to see. Dad says, "Look. They found something amazing near Grandma and Grandpa's village."
"What is it, Dad?" asks Ramy. "It looks scary!"
Dad says, "No Ramy, it's not scary at all. It's the skeleton of a dinosaur.
A group of archaeologists found it. And your uncle Youssef is one of those archaeologists!"

يلعب رامي وملك في الفناء. فجأة ينادي عليهم الوالد من المنزل قال الأب "هاي يا أطفال، تعالوا وانظروا إلى هذه القصة في الجريدة!". جرى الأطفال إلى الداخل ليروا. قال الأب: " انظرا، وجدوا شيئًا مذهلًا بالقرب من قرية الجد والجدة. " يسأل رامي: "ما هذا الشيء يا أبي، إنه يبدوا مخيفًا".
يقول الأب: "لا يا رامي، إنه ليس مخيفًا على الإطلاق! إنه هيكل عظمي لديناصور. مجموعة من علماء الآثار عثروا عليه. وعمكم يوسف أحد هؤلاء العلماء.



"That's awesome, Dad!" says Malak. "The dinosaur skeleton is really old, isn't it?" "Yes, that's right, Malak." says Dad. "It's about 98 million years old!" "Wow! Uncle Youssef has got a really interesting job, hasn't he?" says Ramy.
"Yes, he has. And his work is important too. It helps us learn about the past." says Dad.

تقول ملك: "هذا مذهل يا أبي. أن الهيكل العظمي لهذا الديناصور حقًا قديم، أليس كذلك؟" يقول الأب: "هذا صحيح يا ملك. إن عمره تقريبًا ٩٨ مليون عامًا!".
يقول رامي: "واو، إن عمي يوسف لديه وظيفة شيقة حقًا، أليس كذلك؟" يقول الأب: "نعم، كذلك. وعمله مهم أيضًا. فعمله يساعدنا أن نتعلم عن الماضي."

Help your child read and follow the events of the story.
ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ و يتابع أحداث القصة.



Later that evening Ramy and his family are having dinner.
Dad says, "Do you want to go there the next time we go to Grandma's house?".
Ramy says, "That's a great idea, Dad. It would be an adventure to go into the desert!".
Mom says, "There's a beautiful nature trail there. Why don't we walk that together?"
"Oh yes please, Mom! I love nature."says Malak.

"وكان رامي وأسرته يتناولون العشاء في وقت متأخر من ذلك المساء".
يقول الأب: "هل تريدون الذهاب هناك المرة القادمة عندما نذهب إلى منزل الجدة؟".
يقول رامي: "إنها فكرة رائعة يا أبي. ستكون مغامرة أن نذهب إلى الصحراء!"
تقول الأم: " يوجد متنزه طبيعي جميل هناك. لم لا نتمشّى هناك عليه سويًا؟"
تقول ملك: "أوه نعم من فضلك يا أمي! أنا أحب الطبيعة".



"Ramy! Malak!" Grandma calls. She is so excited to see her grandchildren.
"I have prepared your favorite things - feteer and mint tea! Come inside and eat."
"Hello," says Grandpa to Mom and Dad. "It's so good to see you."
"It's lovely to be here," says Dad. "Tomorrow we want to take the children on a nature trail."
"Excellent," says Grandpa. "There's lots to see in our area. It's a beautiful place."

تنادى الجدة"رامي! ملك!". فهي سعيدة جدًا لرؤية أحفادها. وقالت:"لقد أعددت لكما الأشياء التي تفضلونها - الفطير والشاي بالنعناع! هيّا إلى الداخل لتتناولا الطعام."
يقول الجد لأبي ولأمي."مرحبًا ، إنه لشيء رائع جدًا أن أراكما." قال أبي:" إنه لشيء جميل أن نكون هنا". "نريد غدا أن نأخذ الأطفال في جولة في الطبيعة." قال الجد:" ممتاز". "فهناك الكثير لنراه في منطقتنا. إنه مكان جميل".

Help your child read and follow the events of the story.
ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ و يتابع أحداث القصة.



Activities

1 Read and write (T) True or (F) False. اقرأ واكتب (T) صح أو (F) خطأ.

1. Ramy and Malak are playing in the yard. ( )
2. Archaeologists found the skeleton of an ibex in grandparents' village. ( )
3. Uncle Youssef is an archaeologist. ( )
4. The family will take the children on a nature trail. ( )

2 Complete the following sentences. أكمل الجمل الآتية.

1. Dad sees the story about the dinosaur skeleton in the ....
2. The dinosaur skeleton is near grandparents' ....
3. Uncle Youssef is an ....
4. Grandma is so .... to see her grandchildren.

3 Answer the following questions. أجب عن الأسئلة الآتية.

1. Where did "Dad"see the story?
....
2. What did the archaeologists find near the village?
....
3. How do the archaeologists help us?
....
4. What did "Grandma" prepare for the grandchildren?
....

Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.



The next morning everyone is happy. They are ready to walk the nature trail. They are wearing hats, scarves, and sunglasses. They have snacks and water in their backpacks. Mom has some binoculars too. She wants to look at the amazing birds that live here. They are in a beautiful part of Egypt with many types of rare animals.

كان الكل سعيد في الصباح التالي. كانوا مستعدين للتنزه عبر الطبيعة. وكانوا يرتدون قبعات وأوشحة ونظارات شمسية. وكان معهم وجبات خفيفة والماء في حقائبهم. وكان مع الأم منظارًا أيضًا. فكانت تريد أن تنظر إلى الطيور المذهلة التي تعيش هناك. وكانوا في جزء جميل من أرض مصر والذى به أنواع من الحيوانات النادرة.



It's a lovely warm day, not too hot. It's a perfect day for walking. There are cactus plants and palm trees and they see sheep and some camels.
Malak is very pleased because she loves animals. "Please walk quietly and carefully everyone, "she says. "If we are quiet, we could see a fennec fox, or a dorcas gazelle, or maybe a sand cat."
The family continue along the trail. Ramy sees animals' tracks in the sand. Dad takes a photo of a fennec fox. Mom sees many beautiful birds. Everyone is enjoying the trail.

كان اليوم جميلًا دافئًا ، وليس بالحر الشديد. وكان يومًا مثاليًا للتمشية. كان هناك نباتات الصبار وأشجار النخيل ورأوا أغنام وبعض الجمال.
كانت ملك مسرورة جدا لأنها تحب الحيوانات. وتقول "امشوا بهدوء وحرص جميعًا". وأضافت " إذا كنا هادئين ، يمكن أن نرى ثعلب الفنك ، أو غزال الصحراء ، أو ربما قطة رملية." تستمر الأسرة على طول الطريق. يرى رامي آثار الحيوانات في الرمال. يلتقط الأب صورة لثعلب الفنك. ترى الأم العديد من الطيور الجميلة. والكل كان مستمتعًا بالنزهة.

Help your child read and follow the events of the story.
ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ و يتابع أحداث القصة.



Then Mom says, "Hey everyone, I have something in my shoe. Can we stop for a minute?"
She sits down. The others drink some water and wait. Ramy looks down at the rocks near the path. He sees some strange shapes inside them.
"Look!" he says. "What are these things in the rocks, Dad?"
"I don't know," says Dad. "They look like bones...."
"We are very near the place they found the dinosaur skeleton." says Mom.
"Maybe they are dinosaur bones!"
Ramy is very excited. "Let's ask Uncle Youssef!" he says. "Dad, can we call him?"
"Yes, of course." says Dad.
Uncle Youssef is very interested in the rocks Ramy found. He tells Dad to take some photographs of them and meet him at Grandma's house for dinner.

ثم تلفت الأم نظر الجميع وتقول "لدي شيء في حذائي. هل يمكن أن نتوقف لدقيقة؟"
تجلس الأم. والباقي يشرب الماء وينتظر. ينظر رامي لأسفل على الصخور القريبة من الممر. فيرى بعض الأشكال الغريبة بداخلها.
ويقول"انظروا!". "ما هي هذه الأشياء التي في الصخور, يا أبي؟"
يقول الأب:"أنا لا أعرف". "إنها تشبه العظام....".
تقول الأم: "نحن قريبين جدًا من المكان الذي عثروا فيه على هيكل الديناصور.". "ربما كانت عظام ديناصورات!" رامي متحمس جدًا. وهو يقول: "هيًا نسأل العم يوسف!"وسأل والده قائلًا: "هل يمكن أن نتصل به؟" يقول الأب: "نعم ، بالطبع.". العم يوسف مهتم جدًا بالصخور التي عثر عليها رامي. ويقوم بإخبار الأب أن يلتقط بعض الصور للصخور ومقابلته على العشاء في منزل الجدة.



Later that evening Dad shows Uncle Youssef the photos and Ramy shows him the place on the map. Uncle Youssef asks the family to go back there with him the next day.

في وقت لاحق من ذلك المساء يعرض الأب الصور على العم يوسف كما يبين رامي له المكان على الخريطة. يطلب العم يوسف من الأسرة أن يأتوا معه إلى هناك في اليوم التالي.

Help your child read and follow the events of the story.
ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ و يتابع أحداث القصة.

Activities

1 Read and write (T) True or (F) False. اقرأ واكتب (T) صح أو (F) خطأ.

1. The family goes on the nature trail. ( )
2. Mom doesn't like watching amazing birds. ( )
3. There aren't any animals to see. ( )
4. Ramy found some bones. ( )

2 Complete the following sentences. أكمل الجمل الآتية.

1. Mom has some .... to look at the birds.
2. Malak is very pleased because she loves ....
3. Everyone is enjoying the ....
4. Ramy found .... at the rocks near the path.

3 Answer the following questions. أجب عن الأسئلة الآتية.

1. What did the family pack for the nature trail?

....

2. What did mom like?

....

3. How was the weather that day?

....

4. What did uncle Youssef ask the family to do?

....

Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.



The next day they go back along the trail. They find Ramy's rocks and Uncle Youssef looks at them carefully.
"They are not dinosaur bones in the rocks," says Uncle Youssef. "But they are certainly very old. They are probably from a type of ancient ibex that doesn't exist now."
Ramy is disappointed because the bones are not from a dinosaur. But Uncle Youssef says, "Well done Ramy for finding them! It is important to take time to look at the world around us and watch things - just like an archaeologist! Now, would you all like to come to the dig and see my dinosaur skeleton?"
"Yes please, Uncle Youssef!" say Ramy and Malak.

في اليوم التالي يعودون هناك عبر الممشى. ويعثرون على صخور رامي وينظر إليهم العم يوسف بعناية.
يقول العم يوسف:" إنها ليست عظام ديناصورات في الصخور". لكنها بالتأكيد قديمة جدا. فإنها ربما نوع من أنواع الوعل القديم الذي لم يعد موجود الآن." رامي محبط لأن العظام لم تكن عظام ديناصور. ولكن يقول العم يوسف، " أحسنت يا رامي لعثورك عليها! فمن المهم أن نأخذ الوقت لننظر إلى العالم من حولنا ونشاهد الأشياء - فقط كعالم آثار! والآن، هل تودون أن تأتوا إلى الحفر الأثرى وتروا هيكل الديناصور الخاص بي؟" يقول رامي وملك: "نعم من فضلك يا عم يوسف".



"Here he is," says Uncle Youssef. "What do you think?"
"Wow!" says Ramy. "It's amazing to think it lived millions of years ago."
"And that its bones were under the ground for such a long time." says Malak.
"In fact, we found the skeleton because of climate change." says Uncle Youssef.
"Now there is less rain and fewer plants. This means the ground is dry and the wind can blow away the sand. Things that were under the ground come to the surface. That's good for archaeologists but bad for the planet."

يقول العم يوسف:" ها هو". "ما رأيكم؟" يقول رامي:"واوا" "إنه شيء مذهل أن تفكر كيف عاش هذا منذ ملايين السنين." وتقول ملك: "و عظامه هذه كانت تحت الأرض لهذه الفترة الطويلة." يقول العم يوسف."في الحقيقة ، عثرنا على هذا الهيكل العظمي بسبب تغير المناخ. وأصبح الآن هناك كمية قليلة من الأمطار ونباتات أقل. هذا يعني أن الأرض جافة والرياح كانت تهب مبعدة الرمال. هناك أشياء كانت تحت الأرض وتحركت إلى السطح. هذا الأشياء جيدة لعلماء الآثار ولكنها سيئة للكوكب."

Help your child read and follow the events of the story.
ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ و يتابع أحداث القصة.



Later everyone is getting ready to go home.

"Thanks for showing us the dinosaur, Uncle Youssef," says Ramy" "It was so interesting. I would love to be an archaeologist. It's such a cool job!"

"It's fascinating work, but it's hard," says Uncle Youssef, "Sometimes we look for years and don't find anything."

"We can help if you're looking for other dinosaurs!" says Malak.

"Thanks for all the delicious food." says Mom."It was lovely to see you both again."

"Thank you dear. Come back and see us soon." says Grandma.

في اليوم التالي كان الجميع مستعدًا للعودة إلى المنزل. يقول رامي: "شكرا لك يا عم يوسف أن أريتنا الديناصور. كان شيئًا. أود أن أكون عالم آثار. إنها وظيفة رائعة."

يقول العم يوسف:" إنه عمل مذهل ، لكنه شاق ، فأحيانا نقوم بالبحث لسنوات ولا نعثر على أي شيء."

تقول ملك: "يمكننا المساعدة لو أنك تبحث عن ديناصورات أخرى!".

تقول أمي للجد والجدة:"شكرا على كل هذا الطعام اللذيذ. كان شيئًا جميلًا أن نرى كلاكما ثانية."

تقول الجدة:"شكرا لكم أعزائي. عودوا لرؤيتنا قريبا."



"So, did you enjoy our trip?" asks Mom in the car.

"Yes, I thought it was fantastic." says Ramy. "Me too!" says Malak.

"What do you think you learned from it?" asks Dad.

Ramy says, "I learned it's important to look around us carefully and notice things in our environment."

"Yes, that is how you can discover interesting things." adds Malak.

"You're right, kids" says Dad. "Well done!"

تقول الأم وهي في السيارة: "إذن، هل استمتعتم برحلتنا؟" يقول رامي: "نعم ، أعتقد أنها كانت رائعة." تقول ملك: "وأنا أيضا!"
يسأل الأب: "وماذا تعتقدوا أنكم تعلمتم منها؟"
يقول رامي: "أنا تعلمت أنه من المهم أن ننظر حولنا بعناية ونلاحظ الأشياء التي في بيئتنا."
وتضيف ملك: "نعم ، هكذا يمكنك أن تكتشف أشياء شيقة."
يقول الأب: "أنتم على حق، يا أطفال" أحسنتم!"

Activities

1 Read and write (T) True or (F) False. اقرأ واكتب (T) صح أو (F) خطأ.

1. The bones, that Ramy found, are from a dinosaur. ( )
2. It is important to look at the world around us and watch things. ( )
3. They found the skeleton because of climate change. ( )
4. The children didn't enjoy their trip. ( )

2 Complete the following sentences. أكمل الجمل الآتية.

1. Uncle Youssef looks at .... carefully.
2. The bones are from a type of ancient ....
3. They found the skeleton of dinosaur because of ....
4. Ramy wants to be an ....

3 Answer the following questions. أجب عن الأسئلة الآتية.

1. Why is Ramy disappointed?

....

2. What is the moral of the story?

....

3. What does Ramy want to be?

....

4. How do children feel?

....

Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.



General Activities

1 Read and write (T) True or (F) False. اقرأ واكتب (T) صح أو (F) خطأ.

1. Mom sees the story about the dinosaur skeleton in the newspaper. ( )
2. The dinosaur skeleton is near their house. ( )
3. Uncle Youssef is a farmer. ( )
4. Mom loves looking at birds. ( )
5. Ramy finds dinosaur bones. ( )
6. They go to uncle Youssef's office. ( )

2 Read and match. اقرأ وصل.

1. Dad reads a story
2. The children's grandparents
3. Ramy finds old bones
4. Uncle Youssef invites
5. Ramy wants to be

a. live near the archaeological dig.
b. the family to the dig.
c. about a dinosaur in the newspaper.
d. an archaeologist in the future.
e. in some rocks near the trail.

1-( ) 2-( ) 3-( ) 4-( ) 5-( )

3 Discuss the questions. ناقش هذه الأسئلة

1. Why is it important to look carefully at the world around you?

....

2. What information can archaeology (علم الآثار) give us?

....

3. Why is archaeology an important activity in Egypt?

....

4. Why are dinosaur skeletons interesting? What can they tell us?

....

Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.



Unit (7)

Lesson (1)

1- Listen and write (T) True or (F) False .

Hi! Dina, welcome to my new apartment. My parents had to move to a new job, so we moved to a closer apartment. The new kitchen is bigger. There's more space in the living room so we have a bigger television. We have three bedrooms now. I share a room with my sister.

2- Listen and complete.

Fareeda: Hi Dina, welcome to my new apartment! Come in!
Dina: Thanks! Do you like living here?
Fareeda: I love it! It's a great apartment!
I like this part of town and it's much bigger than our old apartment.
Dina: How long did you live in your old apartment?
Fareeda: Twelve years, since I was born. Then my parents had to move to a new job, so we moved to a closer apartment.

Lesson (2)

Listen and write (T) True or (F) False .

I love my bedroom. I share it with my sister. On the right, there is my bed with a desk next to it. On the left, there is my sister's bed. In the middle of the room, there is an armchair with two cushions and a big closet. On the wall, there are lots of posters of animals.

Lesson (3)

Listen and write (T) True or (F) False .

In cities, people lived very close together, and so they built their houses taller, with two floors. This saved space so they could build more houses. City houses joined together, just like today. In the countryside, houses usually only had one floor, and they also had a garden. They grew vegetables and kept chickens there.

2- Listen and complete.

In Ancient Egypt, many people made their homes near the Nile. They used water for drinking, cooking, and washing. The also used mud from the river to make bricks for their houses. The mud bricks made very strong walls.

Activities On Unit (7)

1- Listen and write (T) True or (F) False .

My uncle is a scientist and loves animals. When he was younger, he traveled a lot in South America for work. He loved it there because the people were very friendly and helped him with his work.

2- Listen and complete.

Hi, My name's Dalida and I like blogging about different things. This week I'm writing about unusual homes. This topic is very interesting for me because my mom's an architect.

Unit (8)

Lesson (1)

1- Listen and write (T) True or (F) False .

Only five people came to the club today! They have problems. My friend Tarek hurt his ankle. Amr had an earache. Lama went to the dentist because she had a toothache. The coach told us to be careful when we have a cough or a sore throat.

2- Listen and complete.

Mom: What's the matter, Dina?
Dina: My tooth hurts.
Mom: Do you eat a lot of sweets?
Dina: Yes, I do.
Mom: You should go to the dentist?
Dina: You are right, mom.

Lesson (2)

1- Listen and write (T) True or (F) False .

One day, a local farmer was walking along the road with an elephant that worked on his farm. The farmer asked if the men would like to touch the elephant to discover how it looks. The men were very excited and walked over to the enormous animal.

2- Listen and complete.

The farmer listened to everything the men said. He turned to them and said, "In fact, you're all correct! Each of you only touched one part of the elephant. If you stop for a moment, and listen to what you all think, you can all see what the elephant looks like."

Lesson (3)

1- Listen and write (T) True or (F) False .

There is very busy hospital in India. That treats patients from all over the country. Sick people usually go to hospital with many relatives so this means the hospital is always very crowded. To solve the problem, the staff began to teach people how to help their patients at home. So, a few number go to hospital now.

2- Listen and complete.

Nurse: Come in, Nahla what's the matter?
Nahla: I fell over in the playground.
Nurse: Oh, dear. Where does it hurt?
Nahla: Here. I have a cut on my arm.
Nurse: Oh, yes. I see. Don't worry. I'll clean it and put a band-age on it.
Dina: Thank you, nurse.

Lesson (4)

1- Listen and write (T) True or (F) False .

In some countries, honey has been used by doctors for thousands of years. It was first used to treat wounds by Egyptian doctors around 5,000 years ago. Recently, scientists have tried to find out exactly why honey is so good for healing wounds and treating illnesses.

2- Listen and complete.

Omar: What's your favourite food?
Kamel: My favourite food is rice with fish.
Omar: Do you like sweets?
Kamel: Yes, I like sweet basbousa.
Omar: Do you like juice?
Kamel: Yes, I like mango juice.

Lessons (5 & 6)

1- Listen and write (T) True or (F) False .

To stay healthy, it's very important to drink plenty of water. This keeps your body working well. It's especially important if it's a very hot day or if you're exercising. You should have healthy food, too. It's important to do sport. Sports make us healthy and fit.

Activities On Unit (8)

1- Listen and write (T) True or (F) False .

Scientists say that some types of honey can kill bacteria. This helps wounds to heal more quickly. The honey that doctors use is a special honey. You can mix some honey with milk to make your cough better.

2- Listen and complete.

Omar: What's the matter?
Amr: I have a toothache.
Omar: Do you eat lots of sweets?
Amr: Yes, I do.
Omar: You should go to the dentist.
Amr: OK. You are right.

Unit (9)

Lesson (1)

1- Listen and write (T) True or (F) False .

Last week Omar went to wildlife park with his friends. He enjoyed it very much. They saw lots of different animals like lions, kangaroos, and penguins. He saw his favorite birds, the parrots. He was a bit sad because he didn't see the bats and he's doing a project on them at school.

2- Listen and complete.

Ali : Where did you go?
Omar : I went to the wildlife park. It was awesome!
Ali : What did you see?
Omar : I saw animals like lions and kangaroos.
Ali : What birds did you see?
Omar : I saw parrots and penguins

Lesson (2)

1- Listen and write (T) True or (F) False .

Once there was a very big old tree in a hot, dry land. It had lived for many years. Its trunk was very wide and it had many green branches. It was famous because it was the only tree where it lived, and it gave shelter and rest to hundreds of travelers as they moved across the country. It was near four towns and many villages in its area and was a meeting point for traders.

Lesson (3 A)

1- Listen and write (T) True or (F) False .

Rain falls from clouds in the sky. Some rainwater goes straight into the ground. But a lot of it goes into streams, rivers, lakes, and then the ocean. This process is called precipitation.

2- Listen and write (T) True or (F) False .

Some of the rainwater changes - the sun warms it and it becomes water vapor. This process is called evaporation'. We cannot see or smell the water vapor and it doesn't stay on the ground. It rises in the air and, as it gets cooler high up in the sky, it changes back into water and forms clouds. As the clouds become bigger, the water in them gets heavier.

Lesson (3 B)

1- Listen and write (T) True or (F) False .

Lots of different people played important roles in Ancient Egyptian society. The person in charge was the pharaoh. The pharaoh needed lots of people to help him. He worked closely with nobles, and they looked after different things. The nobles collected taxes and organized soldiers.

2- Listen and complete.

Soldiers were busy keeping Egypt safe. As Egypt was such an important and very rich country, the soldiers guarded the kingdom. The army was strong, and the soldiers were good at their jobs.

Lesson (4)

1- Listen and write (T) True or (F) False .

A famous Egyptian footballer in England is Mohamed El Neny. He plays for Arsenal. He is Egyptian.

Lesson (5&6)

Listen and write (T) True or (F) False .

Dear Tamer

This week we're talking a lot about unusual animals at school. We looked at animals from around the world and some from Egypt. My favorite unusual animal from Egypt is the dugong - can you see the photo? I think it's got a lovely friendly face and it's very cute! Its nickname is the sea cow and it spends many hours eating grass from the sea bed every day.

Amir

Activities On Unit (9)

1- Listen and write (T) True or (F) False .

Scribes were very important because they were usually the only people who could read and write. They trained for about 12 years before they wrote on papyrus. They wrote many different things like letters, records, and important papers. Without the scribes, we would know almost nothing about Ancient Egypt today.

2- Listen and complete.

1- Dolphins are friendly. They swim in a group with their families in the ocean.
2- Pandas live in China. They eat bamboo. They are big, and black and white.

Activities on Unit (7-9)

1- Listen and write (T) True or (F) False .

The Egyptian tortoise is one of the smallest tortoises in the world. It lives in the desert areas of Egypt and Libya. However,the Egyptian tortoise is now endangered. This is because its habitat has been destroyed, but also because people take them from the wild to keep as pets.

2- Listen and complete.

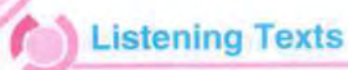
Dorcas gazelles live in the Sahara and Nagev deserts. They are herbivores - This means they only eat leaves and plants. Dorcas gazelles are nearly extinct for two main reasons: Firstly, people hunt them for their meat and skin. Secondly, more and more people are using their habitat for farming and building.

Unit (10)

Lesson (1)

1- Listen and write (T) True or (F) False .

Alexandria is really exciting place to visit. There's a lot to see and do there! It's a big city with lots of amazing



restaurants, stores, markets and museums. There's even a beach!

2- Listen and complete:

Safia : Hi Anas! Do you have interesting places in your town?

Anas : Hello Safia! Yes we have a shopping mall.

Safia : Is it big or small?

Anas : It's very big.

Safia : What do you buy from there?

Anas : I buy my clothes.

Lesson (2)

1-Listen and write (T) True or (F) False .

There is lots of evidence that tells us about life in Ancient Egypt. Evidence is facts or signs that show clearly that something exists or is true. We can learn about buildings from ancient monuments. These are structures that were built to celebrate important people.

2- Listen and complete:

Pharaohs and other important people were buried in beautiful tombs. These also had other things people thought they might need and information about their life.

Lesson (3)

Teacher : OK, children. We're here now. This is the Alexandria Library.

Reem : Wow! It's amazing. Can we go inside?

Teacher : Wait a moment. Is everybody here? Yes, Ok. Let's go in.

Ali : I'm going first!

Teacher : Don't run, Ali. Walk quietly. This is a very important place.

Ali : I'm sorry.

Lesson (4)

1- Listen and write (T) True or (F) False .

One day, a villager wanted to sell his beans in the market, but he couldn't walk far. His camel, Gabi, said, "Give me the sacks of beans - I will take them to the market for you."

2- Listen and complete:

The camel took the sacks of beans to the market. It walked along the road. It didn't recognize the road. The camel lost its way and refused to ask for help. He was foolish and sorry.

Lesson (5 &6)

1- Listen and write (T) True or (F) False .

In our perfect town, there is a big zoo right next to the school. We can go there every afternoon after classes. We can help to feed the animals.
It is really hot in our town, so there is a water park that is always open. It's free to go in!

2- Listen and complete:

There is a wonderful market that sells all kinds of delicious food, like fresh bread and fresh fruit and vegetables.
There is a big park with lots of trees so we can go for family picnics in the shade.
This is our perfect town!

Activities On Unit (10)

1- Listen and write (T) True or (F) False .

We know much about life in Ancient Egypt. There's lots of evidence that tells us about it. We can learn about buildings from ancient monuments. Artifacts like vases and water carriers tell us how people lived. Paintings show scenes of daily life.

2- Listen and complete:

Anas : Where did you go on holiday?

Seif : I went to London. It has lots of tourist attractions.

Anas : What did you visit?

Seif : I visited the British Museum and Buckingham Palace.

Anas : What else did you do?

Seif : I took a boat trip on the River Thames.

Unit (11)

Lesson (2)

Listen and write (T) True or (F) False .

My family and I want to go on a trail to Wadi Degla or the Blue Lagoon at Dahab. Mom said I can take a friend, and I want to take you. Mom said you and I can decide which we like best of the two places. Wadi Degla is cool because you can see lots of animals, but you can swim at the Blue Lagoon.

Lesson (3)

- Listen and complete.

Sherif is going on the Red Sea Mountain Trail. He wants to protect his feet so he's taking some hiking shoes. There are a lot of hills and rocks so he doesn't want to fall over. He's also going to take some snacks from home so he doesn't get hungry.

Lessons (5&6)

Listen and write (T) True or (F) False .

Malak and Sara are free on the weekend. They are going to go on a desert hike. They'll meet at Sara's home. They're going to meet on Friday at 4 pm. They're going to take hiking shoes, water and sweaters.

Activities On Unit (11)

1- Listen and write (T) True or (F) False .

The nature trail trip sounds like fun. The Blue Lagoon it is fine because we can swim and dive. I can swim quickly. And my friend Dina is brave. We are going to the Blue Lagoon on July 2021.

2- Listen and complete.

- Hi Ramy, what are you taking on the Red Sea Mountain Trail?

- My friend said it gets very hot on the trail in the places where there are no streams, so I'm taking a hat for my head. I'm also going to take a blanket in case I get cold at night.

Unit (12)

Lesson (1)

Listen and write (T) True or (F) False .

Today mom received an email from her sister Nadia, and her husband Hany. They are on a business trip traveling around the world. Nadia and Hany were in India last week, and this week they are in Singapore. Mom is reading the email a loudly to her daughter Rana and her son Ali.

Lesson (2)

- Listen and complete.

Reem is going on vacation. She is traveling to Canada by plane. Today, she is packing her suitcase. She knows that there is often rain in Canada, so she is taking her umbrella. It can also be cold there, so she is packing a sweater. Reem loves swimming.

Lesson (3)

Listen and write (T) True or (F) False .

No visit to Jordan is complete without a trip to the Dead Sea. There is so much salt in this sea that you are able

to float on the water. You can also enjoy the Dead Sea mud, which is very good for your skin.

Lesson (4)

Listen and write (T) True or (F) False .

Seleem was feeling sad. It was hot summer, school was over and he wanted to go on vacation. His cousin Sherif was away at the beach and Seleem wanted to be there too. His family usually went on vacation with Sherif's family, but this year that wasn't possible. Seleem's dad had a new job and they had to stay in Cairo.

Lessons (5&6)

Listen and write (T) True or (F) False .

In the morning, we go to the beach to go snorkelling. Swim with the turtles and brightly-colored fish.

The afternoon can be spent on the beach with a picnic and a good book.

Today we race through the sand dunes in beach buggies.

Activities On Unit (12)

1- Listen and write (T) True or (F) False .

Farouk is a farmer in Aswan. Because he lives in Aswan, he knows that the sun will shine most days. He is lucky that he lives on the fertile banks of the Nile so that he can use the water for his crops. Today, Farouk is harvesting the grain, putting it into baskets made from reeds.

2- Listen and complete.

Today we head out of the city for a daytrip to As-Salt. About an hour away from Amman. In the ancient town of As-Salt you will find lots of local Jordanian culture. The markets are wonderful and there are many traditional arts and crafts to buy. We will visit the Abu Jaber Museum.

Activities on units (10-12)

1- Listen and write (T) True or (F) False .

Hi Ghada,

We arrived in Alexandria on Monday, and we haven't stopped! There is so much to see here. We visited some museums and the theatre. We had an amazing tour of famous places. It's really fun, but very busy and crowded.

See you soon,

Randa.

2- Listen and complete.

Dear Amr,

Thank you for telling me to pack some good hiking shoes and a sun hat! We have walked for many hours every day. There are amazing things to see, some unusual flowers and trees. One day, I was lucky enough to see a fennec fox and a wild cat. Hope you're all well.

Salah